

<b>COMMITTEE DRAFT</b> <b>ISO/IEC 3<sup>rd</sup> CD 15408-1, revision</b>		Reference document: <b>SC 27 N19755</b> <b>REPLACES: SC 27 N19505</b>	
Date: <b>2019-07-15</b>		Supersedes document N18803	
THIS DOCUMENT IS STILL UNDER STUDY AND SUBJECT TO CHANGE. IT SHOULD NOT BE USED FOR REFERENCE PURPOSES.			
ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 27 Information security, cybersecurity and privacy protection Secretariat: Germany	Circulated to P- and O-members, and to technical committees and organizations in liaison for comments by: <b>2019-09-09</b> Please submit your comments via the online balloting application by the due date indicated.		
<b>ISO/IEC 3<sup>rd</sup> CD 15408-1, revision</b> <b>Title: IT Security techniques – Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 1: Introduction and general model</b> Project: 1.27.16.01 (ISO/IEC 15408-1, revision)			
<b>Explanatory Report</b>			
<b>Status</b>	<b>SC 27 Decision</b>	<b>Reference documents</b>	
		<b>Input</b>	<b>Output</b>
<i>For details regarding previous development stages refer to 2<sup>nd</sup> page of this explanatory report.</i>			
<b>ISO/IEC 15408-1</b> <b>1<sup>st</sup> WD</b>	54 <sup>th</sup> WG 3 meeting, April 2017, Recommendations 5, 10, 11, 14 (N17041 = WG 3 N1413).	Results of call f. editor (N17276); SoV (N17025).	PL NB endorsement of co-editor (N17549); Liaisons to: CCDB (WG 3 N1391); The Open Group (WG 3 N1394); ISO/TC 22/SC 32 (N17373); Text f. 1 <sup>st</sup> WD (WG 3 N1435).
<b>ISO/IEC 15408-1</b> <b>2<sup>nd</sup> WD</b>	55 <sup>th</sup> WG 3 meeting, October / November 2017, Recommendations 8, 10 (N17666 = WG 3 N1494).	SoCom (WG 3 N1461); Draft DoC (WG 3 N1501).	Editor's report (WG 3 N1465); Liaisons to: CCDB (WG 3 N1455); ISO/TC 22/SC 32 (N18103); DoC (WG 3 N1462); Text f. 2 <sup>nd</sup> WD (WG 3 N1463)
<b>ISO/IEC 15408-1</b> <b>1<sup>st</sup> CD</b>	56 <sup>th</sup> WG 3 meeting, April 2018, Recommendations 8, 10 (N18471 = WG 3 N1557) / 30 <sup>th</sup> SC 27 Plenary, April 2018, Resolution 6 (N18710).	SoCom (WG 3 N1526); Late Com (WG 3 N1562); Draft DoC (WG 3 N1501).	Liaison to: CCDB (WG 3 N1521); DoC (WG 3 N1527); Text f. 1 <sup>st</sup> CD (N18700).
<b>ISO/IEC 15408-1</b> <b>2<sup>nd</sup> CD</b>	57 <sup>th</sup> WG 3 meeting / CRM, Sep / Oct 2018, Recommendations 8, 10 (N18471 = WG 3 N1557) / 30 <sup>th</sup> SC 27 Plenary, April 2018, Resolution 6 (N18710)	SoV (N18851); Draft DoC (N18944).	Liaison to: CCDB (WG 3 N1619); DoC (N18802); Text f. 2 <sup>nd</sup> CD (N18803).
<b>ISO/IEC 15408-1</b> <b>3<sup>rd</sup> CD</b>	58 <sup>th</sup> WG 3 meeting / CRM April 2019, Recommendations 12, 14, 17, 21 (N19523 = WG 3 N1676).	SoV (N19487); Draft DoC (N19537).	Liaison to: CCDB (WG 3 N1680); DoC (N19504); Text f. 3 <sup>rd</sup> CD (N19755).
<b>3<sup>rd</sup> CD Consideration</b> <b>In accordance with Recommendation 14 (see SC 27 N19523) of the 58<sup>th</sup> SC 27/WG 3 meeting / CRM held in Tel Aviv, Israel, 2019-04-01/05 the hereby attached document is re-circulated for a 8-week 3<sup>rd</sup> CD letter ballot closing by</b>			
<b>2019-09-09</b>			
Medium: <a href="http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/open/jtc1sc27">http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink/open/jtc1sc27</a>			
No. of pages: 2 + 149			

Explanatory Report, 2 <sup>nd</sup> page			
Status	SC 27 Decision	Reference documents	
		Input	Output
<b>Study Period IT security testing, evaluation and assurance standards and techniques</b>	51 <sup>st</sup> WG 3 meeting, Oct. 2015, Recommendations 5, 6 (N15594 = WG 3 N1251).		Terms of Reference (WG 5 N1258); 1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup> call f. contr. (WG 3 N1259 /1317).
	52 <sup>nd</sup> WG 3 meeting, April 2016, Recommendation 5, 7 (N16026 = WG 3 N1296).	Expert contr. (WG 3 N1299, 1301).	3 <sup>rd</sup> call f. contr. (WG 3 N1377); Rapporteur's report (WG 3 N1320). Liaison to: CCDB (WG 3 N1266).
<b>ISO/IEC NP 15408-1 (revision) Evaluation criteria for IT security -- Part 1 NWIP</b>	53 <sup>rd</sup> WG 3 meeting, Oct. 2016, Recommendations 5, 6, 15, 19 (N16607 = WG 3 N1364).	Expert contr. (WG 3 N1368, N1371, N1373).	SP report (WG 3 N1363); Call f. editor (WG 3 N1387 = N16886); Liaisons to: CCDB (WG 3 N1330); The Open Group (WG 3 N1332); Text f. NWIP (N16963 [replaces N16883]).

1 **ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 27/WG 3 N19755**

2 **Date: 2019-07-12**

3 **ISO/IEC 15408-1:####(EN)**

4 **ISO/IEC JTC 1/SC 27 IT Security techniques**

5 **Secretariat: DIN**

6 **IT security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 1:**  
7 **Introduction and general model**

8 *Techniques de sécurité IT — Critères d'évaluation pour a sécurité des technologies de*  
9 *l'information — Partie 1 : Introduction et modèle général*

10

11 **CD stage**

12

13 **Warning for WDs and CDs**

14 This document is not an ISO International Standard. It is distributed for review and comment. It is  
15 subject to change without notice and **may** not be referred to as an International Standard.

16 Recipients of this draft are invited to submit, with their comments, notification of any relevant patent rights of  
17 which they are aware and to provide supporting documentation.

18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30

**READ ME FIRST**

Editors general notes for this draft.

Red text in a box are the Editors' comments.

In this draft the editors highlighted the keywords relating to the ISO verbal forms, shall, should, may, can and must using green text in order to highlight these words. This convention will be removed before the FDIS level documents.

Text related to the multi-assurance concepts have been highlighted using blue text

Some editorial changes have also been introduced in order to comply with the [ISO/IEC Directives part 2:2018](#)

The editors are aware that the figures are of low quality. In the final documents high quality images will be used. The Editors hope that they are legible in this draft.

The Editors thank the WG 3 contributors for their contributions and support during the editing cycle.

Legal Notice:  
The text for the legal notice agreed between ISO/IEC and the CCDB will be included here.

31  
32

33	Contents	
34	1	Scope..... 1
35	2	Normative references ..... 1
36	3	Terms and definitions..... 2
37	4	Abbreviated terms..... 20
38	5	Overview..... 23
39	5.1	General ..... 23
40	5.2	The different parts of ISO/IEC 15408 ..... 23
41	5.2.1	General ..... 23
42	5.2.2	Consumers (Risk owners)..... 23
43	5.2.3	Developers..... 24
44	5.2.4	Technical working groups..... 24
45	5.2.5	Evaluators..... 24
46	5.2.6	Others ..... 24
47	5.3	The Target of Evaluation (TOE) ..... 27
48	5.3.1	General ..... 27
49	5.3.2	TOE Boundaries..... 28
50	5.3.3	Different representations of the TOE ..... 28
51	5.3.4	Different configurations of the TOE ..... 28
52	5.3.5	Operational environment of the TOE ..... 29
53	5.4	Presentation of material in this document ..... 29
54	6	General model..... 30
55	6.1	Background..... 30
56	6.2	Assets and security controls ..... 30
57	6.3	Core constructs of the ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) paradigm ..... 33
58	6.3.1	General ..... 33
59	6.3.2	Security Targets..... 33
60	6.3.3	Communicating security requirements ..... 35
61	6.3.4	Meeting the needs of consumers (risk owners) ..... 36
62	7	Specifying security requirements..... 37
63	7.1	Security problem definition ..... 37
64	7.1.1	Introduction..... 37
65	7.1.2	Threats ..... 37
66	7.1.3	Organizational security policies (OSPs)..... 38
67	7.1.4	Assumptions..... 38
68	7.2	Security objectives ..... 39
69	7.2.1	General ..... 39
70	7.2.2	Security objectives for the TOE ..... 39
71	7.2.3	Security objectives for the operational environment..... 39
72	7.2.4	Relation between security objectives and the SPD ..... 40
73	7.2.5	Tracing between security objectives and the SPD..... 40
74	7.2.6	Providing a justification for the tracing ..... 41
75	7.2.7	On countering threats ..... 41
76	7.2.8	Security objectives: conclusion ..... 41
77	7.3	Security requirements..... 41
78	7.3.1	General ..... 41
79	7.3.2	Security Functional Requirements ..... 42
80	7.3.3	Security assurance requirements (SARs) ..... 44
81	7.3.4	Security requirements: conclusion..... 45
82	8	Security components..... 46
83	8.1	Hierarchical structure of security components ..... 46
84	8.1.1	General ..... 46

85	8.1.2	Class.....	46
86	8.1.3	Family.....	46
87	8.1.4	Component.....	46
88	8.1.5	Element.....	46
89	8.2	Operations.....	46
90	8.2.1	General.....	46
91	8.2.2	The iteration operation.....	47
92	8.2.3	The assignment operation.....	47
93	8.2.4	The selection operation.....	48
94	8.2.5	The refinement operation.....	49
95	8.3	Dependencies between components.....	50
96	8.4	Extended components.....	51
97	8.4.1	General.....	51
98	8.4.2	Defining extended components.....	51
99	9	Packages.....	52
100	9.1	General.....	52
101	9.2	Package types.....	52
102	9.2.1	General.....	52
103	9.2.2	Assurance packages.....	53
104	9.2.3	Functional packages.....	53
105	9.3	Package dependencies.....	54
106	9.4	Evaluation method(s) and/or activities.....	54
107	10	Protection Profiles.....	54
108	10.1	General.....	54
109	10.2	Conformance claims and conformance statements.....	54
110	10.2.1	Assurance requirements.....	56
111	10.3	Additional requirements common to strict and demonstrable conformance.....	56
112	10.3.1	Conformance claims and conformance statements.....	56
113	10.3.2	Security problem definition.....	57
114	10.3.3	Security objectives.....	57
115	10.4	Additional requirements specific to strict conformance.....	57
116	10.4.1	Requirements for the security problem definition.....	57
117	10.4.2	Requirements for the security objectives.....	57
118	10.4.3	Requirements for the security requirements.....	58
119	10.5	Additional requirements specific to demonstrable conformance.....	58
120	10.6	Additional requirements specific to exact conformance.....	58
121	10.6.1	General.....	58
122	10.6.2	Conformance claims and statements.....	59
123	10.7	Using PPs.....	59
124	10.8	Conformance statements and claims in the case of multiple PPs.....	59
125	10.8.1	General.....	59
126	10.8.2	Where strict or demonstrable conformance is specified.....	59
127	10.8.3	Where exact conformance is specified.....	59
128	11	Modular Requirements Construction.....	60
129	11.1	General.....	60
130	11.2	PP-Modules.....	60
131	11.2.1	General.....	60
132	11.2.2	Base PP/PP-Module.....	60
133	11.2.3	Requirements for PP-Modules.....	60
134	11.3	PP-Configurations.....	63
135	11.3.1	General.....	63
136	11.3.2	Requirements for PP-Configurations.....	64
137	11.3.3	Usage of PP-Configurations.....	68

138	12	Security Targets.....	70
139	12.1	General .....	70
140	12.2	Conformance claims.....	71
141	12.3	Assurance requirements.....	73
142	12.4	Additional requirements in the exact conformance case.....	73
143	12.4.1	Additional requirements for the conformance claim .....	73
144	12.4.2	Additional requirements for the SPD .....	73
145	12.4.3	Additional requirements for the security objectives.....	73
146	12.4.4	Additional requirements for the security requirements .....	73
147	12.5	Additional requirements in the multi-assurance case.....	74
148	13	Evaluation and evaluation results.....	76
149	13.1	General .....	76
150	13.2	The evaluation context.....	77
151	13.3	Evaluation of PPs and PP-Configurations.....	78
152	13.4	Evaluation of STs.....	78
153	13.5	Evaluation of TOEs.....	78
154	13.6	Evaluation methods and activities.....	79
155	13.7	Evaluation results.....	79
156	13.7.1	Results of a PP evaluation .....	79
157	13.7.2	Results of a PP-Configuration evaluation.....	79
158	13.7.3	Results of a ST/TOE evaluation.....	79
159	13.8	Multi-assurance evaluation .....	80
160	14	Composition of assurance .....	82
161	14.1	General .....	82
162	14.2	Composition models.....	82
163	14.2.1	Layered composition model.....	82
164	14.2.2	Network or bi-directional composition model.....	83
165	14.2.3	Embedded composition model.....	84
166	14.3	Evaluation techniques for providing assurance in composition models.....	84
167	14.3.1	General .....	84
168	14.3.2	ACO class for composed TOEs.....	85
169	14.3.3	Composite evaluation for composite products .....	85
170	14.4	Requirements for evaluations using composition techniques.....	90
171	14.4.2	Composition evaluation issues .....	91
172	14.5	Evaluation by composition and multi-assurance.....	92
173	A.1	Goal and structure of this Annex.....	96
174	A.2	Package families .....	96
175	A.2.1	General .....	96
176	A.2.2	Package family name .....	97
177	A.2.3	Package family overview .....	97
178	A.2.4	Package family objectives.....	97
179	A.2.5	Packages.....	97
180	A.3	Packages .....	97
181	A.3.1	Mandatory contents of a package.....	97
182	A.3.2	Optional Contents of a Package.....	98
183	B.1	Goal and structure of this Annex.....	100
184	B.2	Specification of a PP.....	100
185	B.2.1	Using a PP .....	100
186	B.3	Mandatory Contents of a PP .....	101
187	B.3.1	General .....	101
188	B.3.2	PP introduction (APE_INT).....	102
189	B.3.3	Conformance claims and conformance statement (APE_CCL).....	104
190	B.3.4	Security problem definition (APE_SPD).....	105
191	B.3.5	Security objectives (APE_OBJ) .....	105

192	B.3.6	Extended components definition (APE_ECD) .....	105
193	B.3.7	Security requirements (APE_REQ) .....	105
194	B.3.8	TOE summary specification (TSS) .....	106
195	B.4	Referring to other standards in a PP.....	106
196	B.5	Direct Rationale PPs.....	107
197	B.5.1	General .....	107
198	B.5.2	Conformance claims (APE_CCL) for Direct Rationale PPs.....	109
199	B.5.3	Security Problem Definition (APE_SPD) for Direct Rationale PPs .....	109
200	B.6	Optional Contents of a PP .....	109
201	C.1	Goal and structure of this Annex.....	110
202	C.2	Specification of PP-Modules.....	110
203	C.2.1	Using a PP-Module .....	110
204	C.2.2	Mandatory Contents of a PP-Module.....	110
205	C.2.3	TOE summary specification (TSS) .....	115
206	C.2.4	Direct Rationale PP-Modules.....	115
207	C.2.5	Guidance for inclusion of SPD-elements from a base PP/PP-Module.....	115
208	C.2.6	Optional Contents of a PP-Module.....	116
209	C.3	Specification of PP-Configurations .....	116
210	C.3.1	Mandatory content of a PP-Configuration.....	116
211	D.1	Goal and structure of this Annex.....	121
212	D.2	Using a ST.....	121
213	D.2.1	How to use a ST.....	121
214	D.2.2	How not to use a ST .....	121
215	D.2.3	Questions that <b>can</b> be answered with a ST.....	122
216	D.3	Mandatory contents of a ST.....	122
217	D.3.1	General .....	122
218	D.3.2	ST Introduction (ASE_INT) .....	123
219	D.3.3	Conformance claims (ASE_CCL) .....	126
220	D.3.4	Security problem definition (ASE_SPD).....	126
221	D.3.5	Security objectives (ASE_OBJ).....	126
222	D.3.6	Extended Components Definition (ASE_ECD) .....	126
223	D.3.7	Security requirements (ASE_REQ).....	127
224	D.3.8	TOE summary specification (ASE_TSS).....	128
225	D.4	Direct Rationale STs .....	129
226	D.4.1	General .....	129
227	D.4.2	Conformance claims (ASE_CCL) for Direct Rationale STs .....	130
228	D.4.3	Security Problem Definition (ASE_SPD) for Direct Rationale STs.....	130
229	D.5	Referring to other standards in a ST.....	131
230	E.1	General .....	132
231	E.2	Demonstrable conformance.....	132
232	E.3	Strict conformance.....	133
233	E.4	Exact conformance.....	133
234	E.4.1	General .....	133
235	E.4.2	Exact conformance FAQs / Cheat-sheet.....	136
236			
237	<b>Table of Figures</b>		
238	Figure 1 — Evaluation concepts and relationships.....		31
239	Figure 2 — Evaluation concepts and relationships.....		32
240	Figure 3 — Tracings between security objectives and the SPD.....		40
241	Figure 4 — Relations between the SPD, the security objectives, and the security requirements .....		45
242	Figure 5 — Example of PP-Configuration.....		68
243	Figure 6 — Usage of single and multi-assurance PP-Configurations.....		69

244	Figure 7 — Components of PP-Configurations.....	70
245	Figure 8 — Example of multi-assurance ST .....	75
246	Figure 9 — Evaluation Flow .....	76
247	Figure 10 — Layered composition model.....	82
248	Figure 11 — Network or bi-directional composition model.....	83
249	Figure 12 — Embedded composition model.....	84
250	Figure 13 — Composed TOE evaluated using the ACO class.....	85
251	Figure 14 — Composite evaluation .....	87
252	Figure 15 — Multi-assurance vs single-assurance evaluation.....	93
253	Figure 16 — Composite evaluation vs single-assurance evaluation.....	94
254	Figure 17 — Multi-assurance evaluation of a composite TOE .....	95
255		
256	Figure A.1 — The structure of a package family with assurance or functional packages.....	96
257	Figure B.1 — Contents of a Protection Profile.....	102
258	Figure B.2 — Contents of a Direct Rational PP .....	108
259	Figure C.1 — Content of a PP-Module .....	110
260	Figure C.2 — Inherited conformance claims and statement for exact conformance case.....	113
261	Figure C.3 — Direct Rationale PP-Module .....	115
262	Figure C.4 — Content of a PP-Configuration.....	116
263	Figure C.5 — PP-Configuration and exact conformance.....	119
264	Figure D.1 — Contents of a ST.....	123
265	Figure D.2 — Contents of a Direct Rationale ST.....	129
266	Figure D.3 — Relations between the security problem definition, the security objectives, and the	
267	security requirements for Direct Rationale STs.....	130
268	Figure E.1 — Exact conformance of a ST to multiple PPs .....	134
269	Figure E.2 — Exact conformance with a PP-Configuration including multiple PPs and PP-Modules .....	135
270		
271	<b>Table of Tables</b>	
272	Table 1 — Road map to the “Evaluation criteria for IT security” .....	25
273	Table 2 — Information to be provided to the dependent component developer .....	89
274	Table 3 — Information to be provided to the composite product evaluator and composite product	
275	evaluation authority .....	89
276	Table E.4 — Exact Conformance Summary .....	136
277		

278 **Foreword**

279 ISO (the International Organization for Standardization) and IEC (the International Electrotechnical  
280 Commission) form the specialized system for worldwide standardization. National bodies that are  
281 members of ISO or IEC participate in the development of International Standards through technical  
282 committees established by the respective organization to deal with particular fields of technical activity.  
283 ISO and IEC technical committees collaborate in fields of mutual interest. Other international  
284 organizations, governmental and non-governmental, in liaison with ISO and IEC, also take part in the  
285 work. In the field of information technology, ISO and IEC have established a joint technical committee,  
286 ISO/IEC JTC 1.

287 The procedures used to develop this document and those intended for its further maintenance are  
288 described in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 1. In particular, the different approval criteria needed for the  
289 different types of document should be noted. This document was drafted in accordance with the  
290 editorial rules of the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2 (see [www.iso.org/directives](http://www.iso.org/directives)).

291 Attention is drawn to the possibility that some of the elements of this document may be the subject of  
292 patent rights. ISO and IEC shall not be held responsible for identifying any or all such patent rights.  
293 Details of any patent rights identified during the development of the document will be in the  
294 Introduction and/or on the ISO list of patent declarations received (see [www.iso.org/patents](http://www.iso.org/patents)).

295 Any trade name used in this document is information given for the convenience of users and does not  
296 constitute an endorsement.

297 For an explanation of the voluntary nature of standards, the meaning of ISO specific terms and  
298 expressions related to conformity assessment, as well as information about ISO's adherence to the  
299 World Trade Organization (WTO) principles in the Technical Barriers to Trade (TBT) see  
300 [www.iso.org/iso/foreword.html](http://www.iso.org/iso/foreword.html).

301 This document was prepared by Technical Committee ISO/IEC JTC 1, Information technology,  
302 Subcommittee SC 27, IT Security techniques.

303 A list of all parts in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) can be found on the ISO website.

304 Any feedback or questions on this document should be directed to the user's national standards body. A  
305 complete listing of these bodies can be found at [www.iso.org/members.html](http://www.iso.org/members.html).

306 This **fourth** edition cancels and replaces the **third** edition (ISO/IEC 15408-1:2009), which has been  
307 technically revised.

308 The main changes compared to the previous edition are as follows:

309 — The document has been restructured

310 — Technical changes have been introduced:

311 —Review of the terminology,

312 —The introduction of the exact conformance type,

313 —The removal of low assurance PPs and the introduction of Direct Rationale PPs,

314 —The introduction of PP-Modules and PP-Configurations for modular evaluations

315 —The introduction of multi-assurance evaluation.

## 316 Introduction

317 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) permits comparability between the results of independent security  
 318 evaluations. ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does so by providing a common set of requirements for the  
 319 security functionality of IT products and for assurance measures applied to these IT products during a  
 320 security evaluation. These IT products **may** be implemented in hardware, firmware, or software.

321 The evaluation process establishes a level of confidence that the security functionality of these IT  
 322 products and the assurance measures applied to these IT products meet these requirements. The  
 323 evaluation results **may** help consumers to determine whether these IT products fulfil their security  
 324 needs.

325 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is useful as a guide for the development, evaluation and/or procurement of IT  
 326 products with security functionality.

327 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is intentionally flexible, enabling a range of evaluation approaches to be  
 328 applied to a range of security properties of a range of IT products. Therefore, users of the standard are  
 329 cautioned to exercise care that this flexibility is not misused. For example, using ISO/IEC 15408 (all  
 330 parts) in conjunction with unsuitable evaluation methods, irrelevant security properties, or  
 331 inappropriate IT products, **can** result in meaningless evaluation results.

332 Consequently, the fact that an IT product has been evaluated has meaning only in the context of the  
 333 security properties that were evaluated and the evaluation methods that were used. Evaluation  
 334 authorities are advised to carefully check the products, properties, and methods to determine that an  
 335 evaluation will provide meaningful results. Additionally, purchasers of evaluated products are advised  
 336 to carefully consider this context to determine whether the evaluated product is useful and applicable  
 337 to their specific situation and needs.

338 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) addresses the protection of assets from unauthorized disclosure,  
 339 modification, or loss of use. The categories of protection relating to these three types of failure of  
 340 security are commonly called confidentiality, integrity, and availability, respectively. ISO/IEC 15408 (all  
 341 parts) **may** also be applicable to aspects of IT security outside of these three categories. ISO/IEC 15408  
 342 (all parts) is applicable to risks arising from human activities (malicious or otherwise) and to risks  
 343 arising from non-human activities. ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) **may** be applied in other areas of IT but  
 344 makes no claim of applicability in these areas.

345 Certain topics, because they involve specialized techniques or because they are somewhat peripheral to  
 346 IT security, are considered to be outside the scope of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). Some of these are  
 347 identified below:

348 a) ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not contain security evaluation criteria pertaining to  
 349 administrative security measures not related directly to the IT security functionality. However,  
 350 it is recognized that significant security **can** often be achieved through or supported by  
 351 administrative measures such as organizational, personnel, physical, and procedural controls.

352 b) ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not address the evaluation methodology under which the  
 353 criteria should be applied.

354 NOTE The baseline methodology is defined in ISO/IEC 18045. ISO/IEC 15408-4 can be used to further  
 355 derive evaluation activities and methods from ISO/IEC 18045.

356 c) ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not address the administrative and legal framework under  
 357 which the criteria **may** be applied by evaluation authorities. However, it is expected that  
 358 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) will be used for evaluation purposes in the context of such a  
 359 framework.

360 d) The procedures for use of evaluation results in accreditation are outside the scope of ISO/IEC  
 361 15408 (all parts). Accreditation is the administrative process whereby authority is granted for  
 362 the operation of an IT product (or collection thereof) in its full operational environment  
 363 including all of its non-IT parts. The results of the evaluation process are an input to the  
 364 accreditation process. However, as other techniques are more appropriate for the assessments

365 of non-IT related properties and their relationship to the IT security parts, accreditors **must**  
366 make separate provisions for those aspects.

367 e) The subject of criteria for the assessment of the inherent qualities of cryptographic algorithms is  
368 not covered in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). In the case that independent assessment of  
369 mathematical properties of cryptography be required, the evaluation scheme under which  
370 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is applied **must** make provision for such assessments.

371 ISO terminology, such as "can", "informative", "may", "normative", "shall" and "should" used throughout  
372 the document are defined in the ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2.

373 In the application of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) a justification shall be provided whenever the  
374 recommended option is not chosen.

375 **Editors' Note**

376 During the meeting held in Tel-Aviv the editing group agreed to introduce specific limitation on STs, namely that  
377 an ST could claim conformance to only one PP-Configuration (which indirectly implies it cannot mix PPs and PP-  
378 Configurations).

379 While applying this change editors have concluded that this rule is relevant in the "exact conformance" and  
380 "multi-assurance" cases only, and does not apply to the traditional "strict/demonstrable single-assurance" CC  
381 model.  
382

383 In the "exact-conformance" approach, only specifications that mutually "allow" each other can be  
384 combined. Therefore PP-Configurations could not be combined, since they do not include an "allowed with"  
385 statement. By limiting conformance to only one PP-Configuration we avoid introducing changes in ASE in order to  
386 require checking "allowed with" statements of the inner PP-Configuration's components.

387 In the "multi-assurance" approach, special requirements are introduced in ACE to check the combination of  
388 assurance levels. Combining PP-Configurations would lead to the introduction of similar checks in ASE.

389 In the traditional "strict/demonstrable single-assurance" CC model, this limitation would be:

390 1) *unnecessary*: permitting a single-assurance ST to claim conformance with several strict/demonstrable PPs and  
391 PP-Configurations is in line with the traditional model and does not require any new special check. The rule for a  
392 ST claiming conformance with several PPs apply as well to several PP-Configurations and to combinations of PPs  
393 and PP-Configurations.

394 2) *costly and time-consuming*: requesting the developer and evaluator to write and then evaluate a PP-  
395 Configuration each time to check conformance with several PPs and PP-Configurations is time- and resource-  
396 consuming. Today this is not required in the case of several PPs and it does not seem to be appropriate that the  
397 standard puts unnecessary obligations for the use of PP-Configurations in the strict/demonstrable single-  
398 assurance model.

399 In consequence, CD3 document only constraints the conformance to a PP-Configuration in the exact conformance  
400 and multi-assurance cases. Unless experts raise an objection, no change will be made to the ISO/IEC 15408-1 in  
401 this aspect and this editor's note will be removed.

402 **IT security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security —**  
 403 **Part 1: Introduction and general model**

404 **1 Scope**

405 This document establishes the general concepts and principles of IT security evaluation and specifies  
 406 the general model of evaluation given by various parts of the standard which in its entirety is meant to  
 407 be used as the basis for evaluation of security properties of IT products.

408 This document provides an overview of all parts of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). It describes the various  
 409 parts of the standard; defines the terms and abbreviations to be used in all parts of the standard;  
 410 establishes the core concept of a Target of Evaluation (TOE); describes the evaluation context and  
 411 describes the audience to which the evaluation criteria is addressed. An introduction to the basic  
 412 security concepts necessary for evaluation of IT products is given.

413 This document introduces:

- 414 — the key concepts of Protection Profiles (PP), PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, packages, Security  
 415 Targets (ST), and conformance types;
- 416 — a description of the organization of security components throughout the model;
- 417 — the various operations by which the functional and assurance components given in ISO/IEC  
 418 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 *may* be tailored through the use of permitted operations;
- 419 — general information about the evaluation methods given in ISO/IEC 18045;
- 420 — guidance for the application of ISO/IEC 15408-4 in order to develop evaluation methods (EM)  
 421 and evaluation activities (EA) derived from ISO/IEC 18045;
- 422 — general information about the pre-defined Evaluation Assurance Levels (EALs) defined in  
 423 ISO/IEC 15408-5; and
- 424 — information in regard to the scope of evaluation schemes.

425 **2 Normative references**

426 The following documents are referred to in the text in such a way that some or all of their content  
 427 constitutes requirements of this document. For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For  
 428 undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments) applies.

429 ISO/IEC 15408-2:20XX, *IT security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 2: Security*  
 430 *functional components*

431 ISO/IEC 15408-3:20XX, *IT security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 3: Security*  
 432 *assurance components*

433 ISO/IEC 15408-4:20XX, *IT security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 4: Framework*  
 434 *for the specification of evaluation methods and activities*

435 ISO/IEC 15408-5:20XX, *IT security techniques — Evaluation criteria for IT security — Part 5: Pre-defined*  
 436 *packages of security requirements*

437 ISO/IEC 18045:20XX, *IT security techniques — Methodology for IT security evaluation*

438

### 439 3 Terms and definitions

440 For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions given in  
441 ISO/IEC/IEEE 24765:2017 and the following apply.

442 ISO and IEC maintain terminological databases for use in standardization at the following addresses:

- 443 — ISO Online browsing platform, available at <http://www.iso.org/obp>
- 444 — IEC Electropedia, available at <http://www.electropedia.org/>

#### 445 Editors' Note

446 The editors are aware that the terminology will evolve throughout the career of this revision.

447 The editors have removed the previous subdivisions in this draft and presented the terms in alphabetical order. In  
448 parallel, SC27/WG3 has decided to establish a separate Study Period on the hierarchy of concepts for terminology  
449 used in SC27/WG3 projects in particular focused on the ISO/IEC 15408 and ISO/IEC 18045 projects. The decision  
450 whether such grouping will be present in the next draft depends on the outcome from the Study Period.

451 Experts are asked to contribute to the concept-based order of terms to the Study Period. **See WG3 N1697**

452 Furthermore, the editing group has decided to take steps toward a dedicated Technical Specification to cover the  
453 terminology related to ADV\_SPM subject therefore avoiding any impact to the schedule of the current CC revision.

454 Editors' note some general terminology issues:

455 a **sponsor** is the organization that is responsible for the production of a document. (For example the EALs guess  
456 the sponsor is the CCDB). Under the CCRA the term "sponsor" is used specifically, and this might be a confusing  
457 term to use in regard to identification of PPs, PP-Modules etc?

458 The **owner** of a document may be a different organization – For example an iTC

459 The **author** of a document is the entity writing the document. This can be different to the owner organization. e.g.  
460 consider a cPP that is sponsored by NIAP and Japan, the owner is the iTC, and the author is a subcontracted  
461 organization (that may change).

462 Editors request proposed definitions of these terms and appropriate use in the main text

#### 463 3.1

##### 464 acceptance procedure

465 procedure followed in order to accept newly created or modified configuration items as part of the TOE,  
466 or to move them to the next step of the life-cycle

467 Note 1 to entry: These procedures identify the roles or individuals responsible for the acceptance and the  
468 criteria to be applied in order to decide on the acceptance.

469 Note 2 to entry: There are several types of acceptance situations some of which **may** overlap:

- 470 a) acceptance of an item into the configuration management system for the first time, in particular as part of  
471 an integration process;
- 472 b) progression of configuration items to the next life-cycle phase at each stage of the construction of the  
473 TOE;
- 474 EXAMPLE module, subsystem, quality control of the finished TOE.
- 475 c) subsequent to transport of configuration items
- 476 EXAMPLE parts of the TOE or preliminary products between different development sites;
- 477 d) subsequent to the delivery of the TOE to the consumer;
- 478 e) subsequent to the integration of the TOE

479 EXAMPLE inclusion of software, firmware and hardware components from other sources into the TOE.

#### 480 3.2

##### 481 action

482 evaluator action element of ISO/IEC 15408-3

483 Note 1 to entry: These actions are either explicitly stated as evaluator actions or implicitly derived from  
 484 developer actions (implied evaluator actions) within ISO/IEC 15408-3 assurance components.

485 **3.3**

486 **activity**

487 application of an assurance class of ISO/IEC 15408-3

488 **3.4**

489 **administrator**

490 entity that has a level of trust with respect to all policies implemented by the TSF

491 Note 1 to entry: Not all PPs or STs assume the same level of trust for administrators. Typically, administrators  
 492 are assumed to adhere at all times to the policies in the ST of the TOE. Some of these policies **may** be related to the  
 493 functionality of the TOE, others **may** be related to the operational environment.

494 **3.5**

495 **adverse action**

496 action performed by a threat agent on an asset

497 **3.6**

498 **asset**

499 entity that the owner of the TOE presumably places value upon

500 **3.7**

501 **assignment**

502 specification of an identified parameter in a functional element of a given functional or assurance  
 503 component

504 Note 1 to entry: Such functional element is also called a requirement.

505 **3.8**

506 **assurance**

507 grounds for confidence that a TOE meets the SFRs

508 **3.9**

509 **assurance package**

510 named set of security assurance requirements

511 EXAMPLE "EAL 3".

512 **3.10**

513 **attack potential**

514 measure of the effort needed to exploit a vulnerability in a TOE

515 Note 1 to entry: The effort is expressed as a function of properties related to the attacker (for example: Expertise,  
 516 resources, and motivation) and properties related to the vulnerability itself (for example: Window of opportunity,  
 517 time to exposure).

518 **3.11**

519 **augmentation**

520 addition of one or more requirements to a package

521 Note 1 to entry: in case of a functional package such an augmentation is considered only in the context of one  
 522 package and is not considered in the context with other packages or PPs or STs.

523 Note 2 to entry: in case of an assurance package augmentation refers to one or more SAR(s).

524

525 **3.12**

526 **authorized user**

527 TOE user who **may**, in accordance with the SFRs, perform an operation

528 **3.13**

529 **base component**

530 independent entity in a multi-component product that provides services and resources to one or more  
 531 dependent component(s)

532 Note 1 to entry: This applies in particular to 'composed TOEs' and 'composite products / composite TOEs'.

533 **3.14**

534 **base component developer**

535 entity developing the base component

536 **3.15**

537 **base Protection Profile**

538 **base PP**

539 Protection Profile specified in a PP-Module used as a basis to build a Protection Profile Configuration

540 **3.16**

541 **base TOE**

542 base component which is itself the subject of an evaluation

543 Note 1 to entry: This applies in particular to 'composed TOEs' and 'composite products / composite TOEs'.

544 **3.17**

545 **base TOE developer**

546 entity developing the base TOE

547 **3.18**

548 **base TOE evaluator**

549 entity performing the base TOE evaluation

550 **3.19**

551 **base TOE evaluation authority**

552 evaluation authority monitoring the evaluation of the base TOE

553 **3.20**

554 **check**

555 <evaluation verb> generate a verdict by a simple comparison

556 Note 1 to entry: Evaluator expertise is not required. The statement that uses this verb describes what is mapped.

557 **3.21**

558 **class**

559 <taxonomy> set of ISO/IEC 15408 families that share a common focus

560 **3.22**

561 **coherent**

562 logically ordered and having discernible meaning

563 Note 1 to entry: For documentation, this term addresses both the actual text and the structure of the document, in  
564 terms of whether it is understandable by its target audience.

565 **3.23**

566 **compatible**

567 <component> property of a component able to provide the services required by another component,  
568 through the corresponding interfaces of each component, in consistent operational environments

569 **3.24**

570 **component**

571 <taxonomy> smallest selectable set of elements on which requirements may be based

572 **3.25**

573 **component TOE**

574 (evaluated) TOE that is a component of another composed TOE

575 **3.26**

576 **composed assurance package**

577 **CAP**

578 assurance package consisting of components drawn predominately from the ACO class, representing a  
579 point on the pre-defined scale for composition assurance

- 580 **3.27**  
 581 **composed TOE**  
 582 TOE comprised solely of two or more component TOEs
- 583 **3.28**  
 584 **composed evaluation**  
 585 evaluation of a composed TOE using the specific evaluation technique applicable to composed TOEs  
 586 Note 1 to entry: This evaluation technique refers to the ACO assurance class that is defined in ISO/IEC 15408-3.
- 587 **3.29**  
 588 **composite evaluation**  
 589 evaluation of a composite TOE / product using the specific composite evaluation technique  
 590 Note 1 to entry: This evaluation technique refers to the COMP related assurance families that are specified in  
 591 ISO/IEC 15408-3 for the ADV, ALC, ASE, ATE and AVA classes.
- 592 **3.30**  
 593 **composite product**  
 594 product comprised of two or more components which can be organized in two layers: a layer of one  
 595 already evaluated base component (base TOE) and a layer of one dependent component
- 596 **3.31**  
 597 **composite product evaluation authority**  
 598 evaluation authority monitoring the evaluation of the composite product
- 599 **3.32**  
 600 **composite product evaluator**  
 601 entity performing the composite evaluation
- 602 **3.33**  
 603 **composite product integrator**  
 604 entity installing the dependent component on the base component for the composite product
- 605 **3.34**  
 606 **composite TOE**  
 607 TOE part of a composite product whereby the base TOE and the dependent component are part of the  
 608 composite TOE  
 609 Note 1 to entry: A dependent component in a composite TOE may consist of one or more dependent  
 610 components. For simplification, they are considered as 'one dependent component'.  
 611 Note 2 to entry: A composite TOE may contain parts that are independent from the base component or base  
 612 TOE respectively. For simplification, such parts are considered as belonging to the dependent component.  
 613 Note 3 to entry: The composite evaluation can be applied as many times as necessary to a multi-  
 614 component/multi-layered product, in an incremental approach.
- 615 **3.35**  
 616 **configuration item**  
 617 item or aggregation of hardware, software, or both that is designated for configuration management and treated  
 618 as a single entity in the configuration management process [during the TOE development]  
 619 Note 1 to entry: These **may** be either parts of the TOE or objects related to the development of the TOE like  
 620 evaluation documents or development tools. Configuration management items **may** be stored in the configuration  
 621 management system directly (for example, files) or by reference (for example, hardware parts) together with their  
 622 version.
- 623 [SOURCE: ISO/IEC/IEEE 24765:2017 3.7771. modified, specification of TOE development requirement  
 624 and note 1 to entry added]

625 **3.36**  
626 **configuration list**  
627 configuration management output document listing all configuration items for a specific product  
628 together with the exact version of each configuration management item relevant for a specific version  
629 of the complete product

630 Note 1 to entry: This list allows distinguishing the items belonging to the evaluated version of the product  
631 from other versions of these items belonging to other versions of the product. The final configuration  
632 management list is a specific document for a specific version of a specific product. (Of course, the list **can** be an  
633 electronic document inside of a configuration management tool. In that case, it **can** be seen as a specific view into  
634 the system or a part of the system rather than an output of the system. However, for the practical use in an  
635 evaluation the configuration list will probably be delivered as a part of the evaluation documentation.) The  
636 configuration list defines the items that are under the configuration management requirements of ALC\_CMC.

637 **3.37**  
638 **configuration management**  
639 **CM**  
640 discipline applying technical and administrative direction and surveillance to: identify and document  
641 the functional and physical characteristics of a configuration item, control changes to those  
642 characteristics, record and report change processing and implementation status, and verify compliance  
643 with specified requirements

644 [SOURCE: ISO/IEC/IEEE 24765:2010 3.779 1.]

645 **3.38**  
646 **configuration management documentation**  
647 **CM documentation**  
648 all configuration management documentation including configuration management output,  
649 configuration management list(s), configuration management system records, configuration  
650 management plan and configuration management usage documentation

651 **3.39**  
652 **configuration management evidence**  
653 everything that **may** be used to establish confidence in the correct operation of the configuration  
654 management system

655 EXAMPLE configuration management output, rationales provided by the developer, observations,  
656 experiments, or interviews made by the evaluator during a site visit

657 **3.40**  
658 **configuration management output**  
659 results, related to configuration management, produced, or enforced by the configuration management  
660 system

661 Note 1 to entry: These configuration management related results could occur as documents (for example filled  
662 paper forms, configuration management system records, logging data, hard-copies, and electronic output data) as  
663 well as actions (for example manual measures to fulfil configuration management instructions). Examples of such  
664 configuration management outputs are configuration lists, configuration management plans and/or behaviors  
665 during the product life-cycle.

666 **3.41**  
667 **configuration management plan**  
668 description of how the configuration management system is used for the TOE

669 Note 1 to entry: The objective of issuing a configuration management plan is that staff members **can** see clearly  
670 what they have to do. From the point of view of the overall configuration management system this **can** be seen as  
671 an output document (because it **may** be produced as part of the application of the configuration management  
672 system). From the point of view of the concrete project it is a usage document because members of the project  
673 team use it in order to understand the steps that they have to perform during the project. The configuration  
674 management plan defines the usage of the system for the specific product; the same system **may** be used to a  
675 different extent for other products. That means the configuration management plan defines and describes the  
676 output of the configuration management system of a company which is used during the TOE development.

677 EXAMPLE The structure and content of a configuration management plan are presented in Annex A of ISO  
678 10007:2017.

### 679 3.42

#### 680 **configuration management system**

681 set of procedures and tools (including their documentation) used by a developer to develop and  
682 maintain configurations of his products during their life-cycles

683 Note 1 to entry: Configuration management systems **may** have varying degrees of rigour and function. At  
684 higher levels, configuration management systems **may** be automated, with flaw remediation, change controls, and  
685 other tracking mechanisms.

### 686 3.43

#### 687 **configuration management system record**

688 output produced during the operation of the configuration management system documenting  
689 important configuration management activities

690 EXAMPLE Configuration management item change control forms and configuration management item  
691 access approval forms.

### 692 3.44

#### 693 **configuration management tool**

694 manually operated or automated tool realizing or supporting a configuration management system

695 EXAMPLE Tools for the version management of the parts of the TOE.

### 696 3.45

#### 697 **configuration management usage documentation**

698 part of the configuration management system, which describes, how the configuration management  
699 system is defined and applied by using for example handbooks, regulations and/or documentation of  
700 tools and procedures

### 701 3.46

#### 702 **confirm**

703 <evaluation verb> declare that something has been reviewed in detail with an independent  
704 determination of sufficiency

705 Note 1 to entry: The level of rigour required depends on the nature of the subject matter.

### 706 3.47

#### 707 **connectivity**

708 property of the TOE allowing interaction with IT entities external to the TOE

709 Note 1 to entry: This includes exchange of data by wire or by wireless means, over any distance in any  
710 environment or configuration.

### 711 3.48

#### 712 **counter**

713 act on or respond to a particular threat so that the threat is eradicated or mitigated

### 714 3.49

#### 715 **covert channel**

716 enforced, illicit signaling channel that allows a user to surreptitiously contravene the multi-level  
717 separation policy and unobservability requirements of the TOE

### 718 3.50

#### 719 **delivery**

720 transmission of the finished TOE from the production environment into the hands of the customer

721 Note 1 to entry: This product life-cycle phase **may** include packaging and storage at the development site,  
722 but does not include transportations of the unfinished TOE or parts of the TOE between different developers or  
723 different development sites.

- 724 **3.51**  
725 **demonstrable conformance**  
726 relation between a ST/PP and a PP, where the ST/PP provides an equivalent or more restrictive  
727 solution which solves the generic security problem in the PP
- 728 **3.52**  
729 **demonstrate**  
730 <evaluation verb> provide a conclusion gained by an analysis which is less rigorous than a “proof”
- 731 **3.53**  
732 **dependency**  
733 relationship between components such that a PP, ST functional package or assurance package including  
734 a component shall also include any other components that are identified as being depended upon or  
735 include a rationale as to why they are not
- 736 **3.54**  
737 **dependent component**  
738 dependent entity in a multi-component product that relies on the provision of services and resources  
739 by one or more base components  
740 Note 1 to entry This applies in particular to ‘composed TOEs’ and ‘composite products / composite TOEs’.
- 741 **3.55**  
742 **dependent component developer**  
743 entity developing the dependent component
- 744 **3.56**  
745 **dependent TOE**  
746 dependent component which is itself the subject of an evaluation  
747 Note 1 to entry: This applies only to ‘composed TOEs’ and not to ‘composite products / composite TOEs’.
- 748 **3.57**  
749 **dependent TOE developer**  
750 entity developing the dependent TOE
- 751 **3.58**  
752 **dependent TOE evaluation authority**  
753 evaluation authority monitoring the evaluation of the dependent TOE
- 754 **3.59**  
755 **dependent TOE evaluator**  
756 entity performing the dependent TOE evaluation
- 757 **3.60**  
758 **describe**  
759 <evaluation verb> provide specific details of an entity
- 760 **3.61**  
761 **determine**  
762 <evaluation verb> affirm a particular conclusion based on independent analysis with the objective of  
763 reaching a particular conclusion  
764 Note 1 to entry: The usage of this term implies a truly independent analysis, usually in the absence of any  
765 previous analysis having been performed. Compare with the terms “confirm” or “verify” which imply that an  
766 analysis has already been performed which needs to be reviewed.
- 767 **3.62**  
768 **developer**  
769 organization responsible for the development of the TOE

- 770 **3.63**  
 771 **development**  
 772 product life-cycle phase which is concerned with generating the implementation representation of the  
 773 TOE
- 774 Note 1 to entry: Throughout the ALC: Life-cycle support requirements, development, and related terms  
 775 (developer, develop) are meant in the more general sense to comprise development and production.
- 776 **3.64**  
 777 **development environment**  
 778 environment in which the TOE is developed
- 779 Note 1 to entry: The conditions include physical facilities, security controls, IT systems and development tools.
- 780 **3.65**  
 781 **development tool**  
 782 tools, including any applicable test software that support the development and production of the TOE
- 783 EXAMPLE for a software TOE, development tools are usually programming languages, compilers, linkers and  
 784 generating tools.
- 785 **3.66**  
 786 **direct rationale**  
 787 type of Protection Profile or Security Target in which the SPD-elements of the SPD are mapped directly  
 788 to the SFRs and possibly to the Security Objectives for the operational environment
- 789 Note 1 to entry: Direct rationale does not include security objectives for the TOE.
- 790 **3.67**  
 791 **domain separation**  
 792 **security domain separation**  
 793 security architecture property whereby the TSF defines separate security domains for each user and for  
 794 the TSF and ensures that no user process can affect the contents of a security domain of another user or  
 795 of the TSF
- 796 **3.68**  
 797 **element**  
 798 (taxonomy) most detailed level of definition of a security need as defined in SFRs and SARs
- 799 **3.69**  
 800 **encountered potential vulnerability**  
 801 potential weakness in the TOE identified by the evaluator while performing Evaluation Activities that  
 802 could be used to violate the SFRs
- 803 **3.70**  
 804 **ensure**  
 805 <evaluation verb> guarantee a strong causal relationship between an action and its consequences
- 806 Note 1 to entry: When this term is preceded by the word “help” it indicates that the consequence is not fully  
 807 certain, on the basis of that action alone.
- 808 **3.71**  
 809 **entity**  
 810 identifiable item that is described by a set or collection of properties
- 811 Note 1 to entry: Entities include subjects, users (including external IT products), objects, information, sessions  
 812 and/or resources.
- 813 **3.72**  
 814 **evaluation**  
 815 assessment of a PP, an ST, or a TOE, against defined criteria

816 **3.73**

817 **evaluation activity**

818 **EA**

819 activity derived from work units defined in ISO/IEC 18045

820 Note 1 to entry: The concept of evaluation activities, and the combination of evaluation activities into "evaluation  
821 methods", is described in ISO/IEC 15408-4.

822 **3.74**

823 **evaluation assurance level**

824 **EAL**

825 well-formed package of security assurance requirements defined ISO/IEC 15408-3 and drawn from  
826 ISO/IEC 15408-5, representing a point on the ISO/IEC 15408 pre-defined assurance scale

827 **3.75**

828 **evaluation authority**

829 body operating an evaluation scheme

830 Note 1 to entry: By applying the evaluation scheme evaluation authority sets the standards and monitors the  
831 quality of evaluations conducted by bodies within a specific community.

832 **3.76**

833 **evaluation deliverable**

834 resource required from the sponsor or developer by the evaluator or evaluation authority to perform  
835 one or more evaluation or evaluation oversight activities

836 **3.77**

837 **evaluation evidence**

838 item used as a basis for establishing the verdict of an evaluation activity

839 **3.78**

840 **evaluation method**

841 set of one or more evaluation activities that are derived from ISO/IEC 18045 work units for application  
842 in a specific context

843 **3.79**

844 **evaluation scheme**

845 rules, procedures, and management to carrying evaluations of IT products security implementing all  
846 parts of ISO/IEC 15408

847 Note 1 to entry: Administrative and regulatory framework is usually a part of an evaluation scheme. Such  
848 framework is out of the scope of ISO/IEC 15408.

849 Note 2 to entry: The objective of an evaluation scheme is to ensure that high standards of competence and  
850 impartiality are maintained and a consistency of evaluations is achieved.

851 Note 3 to entry: An evaluation scheme is usually established by an evaluation authority, which defines the  
852 evaluation environment, including criteria and methodology required to conduct IT security evaluations.

853 **3.80**

854 **evaluation technical report**

855 **ETR**

856 documentation of the overall verdict and its justification, produced by the evaluator, and submitted to  
857 an evaluation authority

858 **3.81**

859 **evaluator**

860 individual assigned to perform evaluations in accordance with a given evaluation standard and  
861 associated evaluation methodology

862 Note 1 to entry: An example of evaluation standards is the ISO/IEC 15408 series with the associated evaluation  
863 methodology given in ISO/IEC 18045.

864 [SOURCE: ISO/IEC 19896-1:2018]

- 865 **3.82**  
 866 **exact conformance**  
 867 **EC**  
 868 hierarchical relationship between a PP or PP Configuration and an ST where all the requirements in the  
 869 ST are drawn only from the PP/PP Configuration
- 870 Note 1 to entry: An ST is allowed to claim exact conformance to one or more PPs but only to one PP  
 871 configuration.
- 872 **3.83**  
 873 **examine**  
 874 <evaluation verb> generate a verdict by analysis using evaluator expertise
- 875 Note 1 to entry: The statement that uses this verb identifies what is analysed and the properties for which it is  
 876 analysed.
- 877 **3.84**  
 878 **exhaustive**  
 879 <evaluation verb> characteristic of a methodical approach taken to perform an analysis or activity  
 880 according to an unambiguous plan
- 881 Note 1 to entry: This term is used in ISO/IEC 15408 with respect to conducting an analysis or other activity. It is  
 882 related to “systematic” but is considerably stronger, in that it indicates not only that a methodical approach has  
 883 been taken to perform the analysis or activity according to an unambiguous plan, but that the plan that was  
 884 followed is sufficient to ensure that all possible avenues have been exercised.
- 885 **3.85**  
 886 **explain**  
 887 <evaluation verb> give argument accounting for the reason for taking a course of action
- 888 Note 1 to entry: This term differs from both “describe” and “demonstrate”. It is intended to answer the question  
 889 “Why?” without actually attempting to argue that the course of action that was taken was necessarily optimal.
- 890 **3.86**  
 891 **exploitable vulnerability**  
 892 weakness in the TOE that **can** be used to violate the SFRs in the operational environment for the TOE
- 893 **3.87**  
 894 **extended security requirement**  
 895 security requirement developed according to the rules given in ISO/IEC 15408 but that is not specified  
 896 in any part of ISO/IEC 15408
- 897 Note 1 to entry: An extended security requirement **may** be either a SAR or a SFR.
- 898 Note 2 to entry: Extended security requirements are defined within extended component definitions.
- 899 **3.88**  
 900 **external entity**  
 901 **user**  
 902 human technical system or one of its components interacting with the TOE from outside of the TOE  
 903 boundary
- 904 **3.89**  
 905 **family**  
 906 (taxonomy) set of components that share a similar goal but differ in emphasis or rigour
- 907 **3.90**  
 908 **formal**  
 909 expressed in a restricted syntax language with defined semantics based on well-established  
 910 mathematical concepts

- 911 **3.91**  
912 **functional interface**  
913 external interface providing a user with access to functionality of the TOE which is not directly involved  
914 in enforcing security functional requirements
- 915 Note 1 to entry: In a composed TOE these are the interfaces provided by the base component that are  
916 required by the dependent component to support the operation of the composed TOE.
- 917 **3.92**  
918 **functional package**  
919 named set of security functional requirements that **may** be accompanied by an SPD and Security  
920 Objectives derived from that SPD
- 921 **3.93**  
922 **general model**  
923 type of Protection Profile or Security Target in which the SPD-elements of the SPD are mapped to the  
924 Security Objectives for the TOE and to the Security Objectives for the operational environment.
- 925 Note 1 to entry: SFRs in the general model have to cover all security objectives for the TOE.
- 926 **3.94**  
927 **global assurance package**  
928 assurance package, i.e. a well-formed set of assurance requirements drawn from ISO/IEC 15408-3 or  
929 defined as a set of extended assurance components, that applies to the entire TOE in a multi-assurance  
930 evaluation
- 931 **3.95**  
932 **guidance documentation**  
933 documentation that describes the delivery, preparation, operation, management and/or use of the TOE
- 934 **3.96**  
935 **identity**  
936 representation uniquely identifying an entity within the context of the TOE
- 937 EXAMPLE An example of such a representation is a string.
- 938 Note 1 to entry: entities **can** be diverse such as a user, process, or disk. For a human user, the representation  
939 could be the full or abbreviated name or a unique pseudonym.
- 940 Note 2 to entry: An entity **can** have more than one identity.
- 941 **3.97**  
942 **implementation representation**  
943 least abstract representation of the TSF, specifically the one that is used to create the TSF itself without  
944 further design refinement
- 945 Note 1 to entry: Source code that is then compiled or a hardware drawing that is used to build the actual  
946 hardware are examples of parts of an implementation representation.
- 947 **3.98**  
948 **informal**  
949 expressed in natural language
- 950 **3.99**  
951 **installation**  
952 procedure performed by a human user embedding the TOE in its operational environment and putting  
953 it into an operational state
- 954 Note 1 to entry: This operation is performed normally only once, after receipt and acceptance of the TOE.  
955 The TOE is expected to be progressed to a configuration allowed by the ST. If similar processes have to be  
956 performed by the developer they are denoted as “generation” throughout the class ALC: Life-cycle support. If the  
957 TOE requires an initial start-up that does not need to be repeated regularly, this process would be classified as  
958 installation.

959 **3.100**  
 960 **inter TSF transfer**  
 961 communication between the TOE and the security functionality of other trusted IT products

962 **3.101**  
 963 **internal communication channel**  
 964 communication channel between separated parts of the TOE

965 **3.102**  
 966 **internal TOE transfer**  
 967 communicating data between separated parts of the TOE

968 **3.103**  
 969 **internally consistent**  
 970 no apparent contradictions exist between any aspects of an entity

971 Note 1 to entry: In terms of documentation, this means that there **can** be no statements within the  
 972 documentation that **can** be taken to contradict each other.

973 **3.104**  
 974 **interpretation**  
 975 clarification or amplification of an ISO/IEC 15408, ISO/IEC 18045, or scheme requirement

976 **3.105**  
 977 **iteration**  
 978 use of the same component to express two or more distinct requirements

979 **3.106**  
 980 **justify**  
 981 <evaluation verb> provide a rationale providing sufficient reason

982 Note 1 to entry: The term 'justify' is more rigorous than a 'demonstrate'. This term requires significant rigour in  
 983 terms of very carefully and thoroughly explaining every step of a logical analysis leading to a conclusion.

984 **3.107**  
 985 **laboratory**  
 986 organization with a management system providing evaluation and or testing work in accordance with a  
 987 defined set of policies and procedures and utilizing a defined methodology for testing or evaluating the  
 988 security functionality of IT products

989 Note 1 to entry: These organizations are often given alternative names by various approval authorities. For  
 990 example, IT Security Evaluation Facility (ITSEF), Common Criteria Testing Laboratory (CCTL), Commercial  
 991 Evaluation Facility (CLEF).

992 [SOURCE: ISO/IEC 19896-1 ,3.7]

993 **3.108**  
 994 **layering**  
 995 design technique where separate groups of components are hierarchically organized to have separate  
 996 responsibilities such that a group of components depends on groups of components below it in the  
 997 hierarchy for services, and provides its services to the groups of components above it

998 **3.109**  
 999 **life cycle model**  
 1000 framework containing the processes, activities, and tasks involved in the development, operation, and  
 1001 maintenance of a product, spanning the life of the system from the definition of its requirements to the  
 1002 termination of its use

1003 Note 1 to entry: See also Figure 1.

1004 [SOURCE: ISO/IEC/IEEE 24765:2017 2.2219 modified, note 1 to entry added]

- 1005 **3.110**  
1006 **module**  
1007 **TOE-module**  
1008 small architectural unit that **can** be characterized in terms of the properties discussed in TSF internals  
1009 (ADV\_INT)
- 1010 **3.111**  
1011 **monitoring attack**  
1012 generic category of attack methods that includes passive analysis techniques aiming at disclosure of  
1013 sensitive internal data of the TOE by operating the TOE in the way that corresponds to the guidance  
1014 documents
- 1015 **3.112**  
1016 **multi-assurance evaluation**  
1017 evaluation using a PP-Configuration where the TOE is organized in parts, each part being associated  
1018 with its own assurance package
- 1019 **3.113**  
1020 **non-bypassability**  
1021 ⟨of the TSF⟩ security architecture property whereby all SFR-related actions are mediated by the TSF
- 1022 **3.114**  
1023 **object**  
1024 entity in the TOE, that contains or receives information, and upon which subjects perform operations
- 1025 **3.115**  
1026 **observation report**  
1027 report written by the evaluator requesting a clarification or identifying a problem during the evaluation
- 1028 **3.116**  
1029 **operation**  
1030 ⟨on an ISO/IEC 15408 component⟩ modification or repetition of a component by assignment, iteration,  
1031 refinement, or selection
- 1032 **3.117**  
1033 **operation**  
1034 ⟨on an object⟩ specific type of action performed by a subject on an object
- 1035 **3.118**  
1036 **operation**  
1037 usage phase of the TOE including normal usage, administration, and maintenance of the TOE after  
1038 delivery and preparation
- 1039 **3.119**  
1040 **operational environment**  
1041 environment in which the TOE is operated, consisting of everything that is outside the TOE boundary
- 1042 **3.120**  
1043 **optional Security Functional Requirement**  
1044 **optional SFR**  
1045 SFR in a Protection Profile or PP-Module that contributes to a stated aspect of the PP's security problem  
1046 description but its inclusion in a conformant ST's list of SFRs is not mandatory.  
1047 Note 1 to entry: An optional SFR can address appropriate SPD elements threat(s) and/or OSPs.
- 1048 **3.121**  
1049 **organizational security policy**  
1050 **OSP**  
1051 set of security rules, procedures, or guidelines for an organization  
1052 Note 1 to entry: A policy **may** pertain to a specific operational environment.

- 1053 **3.122**  
 1054 **overall verdict**  
 1055 statement issued by an evaluator with respect to the result of an evaluation  
 1056 Note 1 to entry: The statement **can** be expressed as “pass” or “fail”.
- 1057 **3.123**  
 1058 **oversight verdict**  
 1059 statement issued by an evaluation authority confirming or rejecting an overall verdict based on the  
 1060 results of evaluation oversight activities
- 1061 **3.124**  
 1062 **potential vulnerability**  
 1063 suspected, but not confirmed, weakness  
 1064 Note 1 to entry: Suspicion is by virtue of a postulated attack path to violate the SFRs.
- 1065 **3.125**  
 1066 **preparation**  
 1067 activity in the life-cycle phase of a product, comprising the customer's acceptance of the delivered TOE  
 1068 and its installation  
 1069 Note 1 to entry: preparation **may** include such things as booting, initialization, start-up and progressing the TOE  
 1070 to a state ready for operation.
- 1071 **3.126**  
 1072 **production**  
 1073 life-cycle phase which consists of transforming the implementation representation into the  
 1074 implementation of the TOE, i.e. into a state acceptable for delivery to the customer  
 1075 Note 1 to entry: This phase **may** comprise manufacturing, integration, generation, internal transports,  
 1076 storage, and labelling of the TOE.
- 1077 **3.127**  
 1078 **Protection Profile**  
 1079 **PP**  
 1080 implementation-independent statement of security needs for a TOE type
- 1081 **3.128**  
 1082 **Protection Profile configuration**  
 1083 **PP-Configuration**  
 1084 implementation-independent statement of security needs for a TOE type contained in base Protection  
 1085 Profile(s), Protection Profile Module(s), and Protection Profile(s) that are not base PPs for any PP-  
 1086 Module included.
- 1087 **3.129**  
 1088 **Protection Profile module**  
 1089 **PP-Module**  
 1090 implementation-independent statement of security needs for a TOE type complementary to one or  
 1091 more Base Protection Profiles
- 1092 **3.130**  
 1093 **prove**  
 1094 <evaluation verb> show correspondence by formal analysis in its mathematical sense  
 1095 Note 1 to entry: It is completely rigorous in all ways. Typically, the term prove is used when there is a desire to  
 1096 show correspondence between two TSF representations at a high level of rigour.
- 1097 **3.131**  
 1098 **record**  
 1099 <evaluation verb> retain a written description of procedures, events, observations, insights, and results  
 1100 in sufficient detail to enable the work performed during the evaluation to be reconstructed at a later  
 1101 time

- 1102 **3.132**  
1103 **refinement**  
1104 addition of details to a security component
- 1105 **3.133**  
1106 **report**  
1107 <evaluation verb> include evaluation results and supporting material in the evaluation technical report  
1108 or an observation report
- 1109 **3.134**  
1110 **residual vulnerability**  
1111 weakness that **cannot** be exploited in the operational environment for the TOE, but that could be used  
1112 to violate the SFRs by an attacker with greater attack potential than is anticipated in the operational  
1113 environment for the TOE
- 1114 **3.135**  
1115 **role**  
1116 pre-defined set of rules establishing the allowed interactions between a user and the TOE
- 1117 **3.136**  
1118 **secret**  
1119 information that **shall** be known only to authorized users and/or the TSF in order to enforce a specific  
1120 SFP
- 1121 **3.137**  
1122 **secure state**  
1123 state in which the TSF data are consistent and the TSF continues correct enforcement of the SFRs
- 1124 **3.138**  
1125 **security assurance requirement**  
1126 **SAR**  
1127 security requirement, that refers to the conditions and processes for the development and delivery of  
1128 the TOE, and the actions required of evaluators with respect to evidence produced from these  
1129 conditions and processes
- 1130 **3.139**  
1131 **security attribute**  
1132 property of subjects, users, objects, information, sessions and/or resources that is used in defining the  
1133 SFRs and whose values are used in enforcing the SFRs  
1134 Note 1 to entry: Users **can** include external IT products.
- 1135 **3.140**  
1136 **security domain**  
1137 environment provided by the TSF for the use by untrusted entities in such a way that the environment  
1138 is isolated and protected from other environments
- 1139 **3.141**  
1140 **security function policy**  
1141 **SFP**  
1142 set of rules describing specific security behaviour enforced by the TSF and expressible as a set of SFRs
- 1143 **3.142**  
1144 **security functional requirement**  
1145 **SFR**  
1146 security requirement, which contributes to fulfil the TOE's Security Problem Definition (SPD) as defined  
1147 in a specific ST or in a PP  
1148 Note 1 to entry: A security functional requirement can be addressed directly as in the direct rationale model, or  
1149 indirectly, through the Security Objectives for the TOE, as in the general model.

- 1150 **3.143**  
 1151 **security objective**  
 1152 statement of an intent to counter identified threats and/or satisfy identified organization security  
 1153 policies and/or assumptions
- 1154 **3.144**  
 1155 **security problem**  
 1156 **security problem definition**  
 1157 **SPD**  
 1158 statement which in a formal manner defines the nature and scope of the security that the TOE is  
 1159 intended to address
- 1160 Note 1 to entry: This statement consists of a combination of: threats to be countered by the TOE and its  
 1161 operational environment, the OSPs enforced by the TOE and its operational environment, and the assumptions  
 1162 that are upheld for the operational environment of the TOE.
- 1163 Note 2 to entry: SPD-elements include threats, OSPs, and assumption.
- 1164 **3.145**  
 1165 **security requirement**  
 1166 requirement, stated in 15408 standardized language, which is part of a TOE security specification as  
 1167 defined in a specific ST or in a PP
- 1168 **3.146**  
 1169 **Security Target**  
 1170 **ST**  
 1171 implementation-dependent statement of security requirements for a TOE based on a security problem  
 1172 definition
- 1173 **3.147**  
 1174 **selection**  
 1175 specification of one or more items from a list in a component
- 1176 **3.148**  
 1177 **selection-based Security Functional Requirement**  
 1178 **selection-based SFR**  
 1179 SFR in a Protection Profile/PP-Module that contributes to a stated aspect of the PP's//PP-Module's  
 1180 security problem definition that **is to** be included in a conformant ST if a selection choice identified in  
 1181 the PP/PP-Module indicates that it has an associated selection-based SFR
- 1182 **3.149**  
 1183 **semiformal**  
 1184 expressed in a restricted syntax language with defined semantics
- 1185 **3.150**  
 1186 **single-assurance evaluation**  
 1187 evaluation using a single set of assurance requirements
- 1188 **3.151**  
 1189 **specify**  
 1190 <evaluation verb> provide specific details about an entity in a rigorous and precise manner
- 1191 **3.152**  
 1192 **strict conformance**  
 1193 hierarchical relationship between a PP and a ST/PP where all the requirements in the PP also exist in  
 1194 the ST/PP
- 1195 Note 1 to entry: This relation **can** be paraphrased as “the ST **shall** contain all statements that are in the PP but **may**  
 1196 contain more”. Strict conformance is expected to be used for stringent requirements that are to be adhered to in a  
 1197 single manner.

- 1198 **3.153**  
1199 **sub-activity**  
1200 application of an assurance component of ISO/IEC 15408-3
- 1201 Note 1 to entry: Assurance families are not explicitly addressed in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) because evaluations  
1202 are conducted on a single assurance component from an assurance family.
- 1203 **3.154**  
1204 **sub-TSF**  
1205 combined functionality of all hardware, software, and firmware of a TOE that is relied upon for the  
1206 correct enforcement of the SFRs defined in one PP-Configuration component
- 1207 Note 1 to entry: This set of SFRs is closed by dependencies, objectives, and SPD elements in the PP-Configuration  
1208 component.
- 1209 Note 2 to entry: The notion of sub-TSF is applied in relationship with the specification and evaluation of PP-  
1210 Configurations and conformant STs. It can be used in the single-assurance approach but it must be used in the  
1211 multi-assurance approach: sub-TSFs must be defined in a multi-assurance PP-Configuration and in conformant  
1212 STs.
- 1213 Note 3 to entry: each sub-TSF is associated with its own set of SARs in a multi-assurance PP-Configuration. In the  
1214 rest of the document, a set of SARs may be an assurance package.
- 1215 Note 4 to entry: a sub-TSF has the characteristics of a TSF.
- 1216 **3.155**  
1217 **subject**  
1218 entity in the TOE that performs operations on objects
- 1219 **3.156**  
1220 **tailoring**  
1221 addition of one or more functional requirements to a functional package, and/or the addition of one or  
1222 more selections to an SFR in a functional package
- 1223 Note 1 to entry: such tailoring is considered only in the context of one package and is not considered in the  
1224 context with other packages, PPs, or PP-Modules.
- 1225 Note 2 to entry: the selections in the SFR may be replaced by the additional selections.
- 1226 Note 3 to entry: selections can only be added for packages claimed by PPs or PP-Modules. STs cannot claim  
1227 package-name tailored conformance to the package.
- 1228 **3.157**  
1229 **target of evaluation**  
1230 **TOE**  
1231 set of software, firmware and/or hardware possibly accompanied by guidance, which is the subject of  
1232 an evaluation
- 1233 **3.158**  
1234 **threat agent**  
1235 entity that **can** exercise adverse actions on assets protected by the TOE
- 1236 **3.159**  
1237 **time period to exposure**  
1238 time interval when an element is participating in an IT system and could be attacked
- 1239 **3.160**  
1240 **TOE resource**  
1241 anything usable or consumable in the TOE
- 1242 **3.161**  
1243 **TOE security functionality**  
1244 **TSF**  
1245 combined functionality of all hardware, software, and firmware of a TOE that is relied upon for the  
1246 correct enforcement of the SFRs

- 1247 **3.162**  
 1248 **TOE type**  
 1249 set of TOEs that have common characteristics
- 1250 Note 1 to entry: The TOE type **may** be more explicitly defined in a PP.
- 1251 **3.163**  
 1252 **trace**  
 1253 <evaluation verb> identity relation between two sets of entities, which shows which entities in the first  
 1254 set correspond to which entities in the second
- 1255 **3.164**  
 1256 **transfer outside of the TOE**  
 1257 TSF-mediated communication of data to entities not under the control of the TSF
- 1258 **3.165**  
 1259 **translation**  
 1260 describes the process of describing security requirements in a standardized language.
- 1261 Note 1 to entry: Use of the term translation in this context is not literal and does not imply that every SFR  
 1262 expressed in standardized language **can** also be translated back to the Security Objectives.
- 1263 **3.166**  
 1264 **trusted channel**  
 1265 means by which a TSF and another trusted IT product **can** communicate with necessary confidence
- 1266 **3.167**  
 1267 **trusted IT product**  
 1268 IT product, other than the TOE, which has its security functional requirements administratively  
 1269 coordinated with the TOE and which is assumed to enforce its security functional requirements  
 1270 correctly
- 1271 **3.168**  
 1272 **trusted path**  
 1273 means by which a user and a TSF **can** communicate with the necessary confidence
- 1274 Note 1 to entry: Communication typically implies the establishment of identification and authentication of both  
 1275 parties, as well as the concept of a user specific session which is integrity-protected.
- 1276 Note 2 to entry: When the external entity is a trusted IT product, the notion of trusted channel is used instead of  
 1277 trusted path.
- 1278 Note 3 to entry: Both physical and logical aspects of secure communication **can** be considered as mechanisms  
 1279 for gaining confidence.
- 1280 **3.169**  
 1281 **TSF data**  
 1282 data for the operation of the TOE upon which the enforcement of the SFR relies
- 1283 **3.170**  
 1284 **TSF interface**  
 1285 **TSFI**  
 1286 means by which either external entities or subjects within the TOE but outside of the TSF interact with  
 1287 or supply data to the TSF
- 1288 **3.171**  
 1289 **TSF self-protection**  
 1290 security architecture property whereby the TSF **cannot** be corrupted by non-TSF code or entities
- 1291 **3.172**  
 1292 **user data**  
 1293 data received or produced by the TOE, which is meaningful to some external entity but which do not affect the  
 1294 operation of the TSF

1295 Note 1 to entry: Depending of the concept, this definition assumes that the same data created by users that has  
1296 an actual impact on the operation of the TSF can be regarded as the TSF data.

1297 **3.173**

1298 **verdict**

1299 statement issued by an evaluator with respect to evaluator action element, assurance component, or  
1300 class

1301 Note 1 to entry: The statement **can** be presented as: pass, fail or inconclusive.

1302 Note 2 to entry: Also see overall verdict.

1303 **3.174**

1304 **verify**

1305 <evaluation verb> rigorously review in detail with an independent determination of sufficiency

1306 Note 1 to entry: Also see “confirm”. This term has more rigorous connotations. The term “verify” is used in the  
1307 context of evaluator actions where an independent effort is required of the evaluator.

1308 **3.175**

1309 **vulnerability**

1310 weakness in the TOE that **can** be used to violate the SFRs in some environment

1311 **3.176**

1312 **window of opportunity**

1313 period of time that an attacker has access to the TOE

1314 **3.177**

1315 **work unit**

1316 most granular level of evaluation work

1317 Note 1 to entry: ISO/IEC 18405 defines the evaluation work units for a subset of ISO/IEC 15408-3 security  
1318 assurance requirements.

1319 **4 Abbreviated terms**

1320 The following abbreviations are used in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts):

1321	<b>AP</b>	Assurance Package
1322	<b>API</b>	Application Programming Interface
1323	<b>CAP</b>	Composition Assurance Package
1324	<b>CD</b>	Compact Disk
1325	<b>CM</b>	Configuration Management
1326	<b>COMP</b>	Composite Product Assurance Package
1327	<b>DAC</b>	Discretionary Access Control
1328	<b>DPA</b>	Differential Power Analysis
1329	<b>DRBG</b>	Deterministic Random Bit Generator
1330	<b>EA</b>	Evaluation Activity
1331	<b>EAL</b>	Evaluation Assurance Level
1332	<b>EM</b>	Evaluation Method
1333	<b>EMS</b>	Electromagnetic spectrum
1334	<b>ETR</b>	Evaluation Technical Report
1335	<b>GAP</b>	Global assurance package
1336	<b>GB</b>	Gigabyte

1337	<b>GHz</b>	Gigahertz
1338	<b>GUI</b>	Graphical User Interface
1339	<b>HSM</b>	Hardware Security Module
1340	<b>HTTPS</b>	Hypertext transfer protocol secure
1341	<b>IC</b>	Integrated Circuit
1342	<b>IOCTL</b>	Input Output Control
1343	<b>IP</b>	Internet Protocol
1344	<b>IPsec</b>	IP security (protocol)
1345	<b>IT</b>	Information Technology
1346	<b>LDAP</b>	Lightweight Directory Access Protocol
1347	<b>MAC</b>	Mandatory access control
1348	<b>MB</b>	Megabyte
1349	<b>MBps</b>	Megabytes per second
1350	<b>OR</b>	Observation Report
1351	<b>OS</b>	Operating System
1352	<b>OSP</b>	Organizational Security Policy
1353	<b>OTP</b>	One-time programmable
1354	<b>PC</b>	Personal Computer
1355	<b>PCI</b>	Peripheral Component Interconnect
1356	<b>PKI</b>	Public Key Infrastructure
1357	<b>PP</b>	Protection Profile
1358	<b>PPA</b>	Protection Profile Assurance Package
1359	<b>RAM</b>	Random Access Memory
1360	<b>RBG</b>	Random Bit Generator
1361	<b>RNG</b>	Random Number Generator
1362	<b>RPC</b>	Remote Procedure Call
1363	<b>SAR</b>	Security Assurance Requirement
1364	<b>SFP</b>	Security Function Policies
1365	<b>SFR</b>	Security Functional Requirement
1366	<b>SPA</b>	Simple Power Analysis
1367	<b>SPD</b>	Security Problem Definition
1368	<b>SSH</b>	Secure shell
1369	<b>ST</b>	Security Target
1370	<b>STA</b>	Security Target Assurance Package
1371	<b>TCP</b>	Transmission Control Protocol
1372	<b>TLS</b>	Transport layer security
1373	<b>TOE</b>	Target of Evaluation
1374	<b>TSF</b>	TOE Security Functionality

1375	<b>TSFI</b>	TSF Interface
1376	<b>USB</b>	Universal serial bus
1377	<b>VPN</b>	Virtual Private Network
1378		
1379		

## 1380 5 Overview

### 1381 5.1 General

1382 This Clause 5 introduces the main concepts of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). It identifies the concept of the  
1383 Target of Evaluation (TOE), the target audience of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), and the approach taken to  
1384 present the material in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts).

### 1385 5.2 The different parts of ISO/IEC 15408

1386 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is presented as a set of distinct but related parts as identified below. Terms  
1387 used in the description of the parts are explained in 3.

- 1388 a) **ISO/IEC 15408-1, Introduction, and general model** is the introduction to ISO/IEC 15408 (all  
1389 parts). It defines the general concepts and principles of IT security evaluation and presents a  
1390 general model of evaluation.
- 1391 b) **ISO/IEC 15408-2, Security functional components** establishes a set of functional components  
1392 that serve as standard templates upon which security functional requirements for TOEs are  
1393 based. ISO/IEC 15408-2 catalogues the set of security functional components and organizes  
1394 them in families and classes.
- 1395 c) **ISO/IEC 15408-3, Security assurance components** establishes a set of assurance components  
1396 that serve as standard templates upon which security assurance requirements for TOEs are  
1397 based. ISO/IEC 15408-3 catalogues the set of security assurance components and organizes  
1398 them into families and classes. ISO/IEC 15408-3 also defines evaluation criteria for PPs, STs and  
1399 TOEs.
- 1400 d) **ISO/IEC 15408-4, Framework for the specification of evaluation methods and activities**  
1401 provides a standardized framework for the specification of evaluation methods and activities  
1402 that **may** be included in PPs, STs and any documents supporting them, to be used by evaluators  
1403 in support of evaluations using the model described in the other parts of ISO/IEC 15408.  
1404 ISO/IEC 18045 is fundamental to ISO/IEC 15408 (part 4).
- 1405 e) **ISO/IEC 15408-5, Pre-defined packages of security requirements** provides packages of  
1406 security assurance and security functional requirements that have been identified as useful in  
1407 support of common usage by stakeholders. Examples of provided packages include the  
1408 evaluation assurance levels (EAL) and the composed assurance packages (CAPs).

1409 In support of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), other documents have been published. The bibliography  
1410 provides a list of supportive documents and it is anticipated that other documents will be published,  
1411 including technical rationale material and guidance documents.

1412 NOTE ISO/IEC 18045 provides the baseline methodology for IT security evaluations performed in  
1413 accordance with ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). Target audience of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts)

#### 1414 5.2.1 General

1415 There are five main groups with a general interest in evaluation of the security properties of TOEs:  
1416 consumers (risk owners), developers, technical working groups, evaluators and others. The information  
1417 presented in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) has been structured to support the needs of all of these groups  
1418 which are considered to be the principal users of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). The groups **can** benefit  
1419 from the criteria as explained in 5.2.2 through 5.2.6 .

#### 1420 5.2.2 Consumers (Risk owners)

1421 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is written to ensure that evaluation fulfils the needs of risk owners as this is  
1422 the fundamental purpose and justification for the evaluation process.

1423 Risk owners **can** use the results of evaluations to help decide whether a TOE fulfils their security needs.  
1424 These security needs are typically identified as a result of both risk analysis and policy direction. Risk  
1425 owners **can** also use the evaluation results to compare different TOEs.

1426 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) gives risk owners, especially those in consumer groups and communities of  
1427 interest, an implementation- independent structure, termed the PP, in which to express their security  
1428 requirements in an unambiguous manner.

### 1429 **5.2.3 Developers**

1430 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is intended to support IT product developers in preparing for and assisting in  
1431 the evaluation of their TOEs and in identifying security requirements to be satisfied by those TOEs.  
1432 These requirements are contained in an implementation-dependent construct termed the Security  
1433 Target (ST). This ST may conform to one or more PPs to show that the TOE meets the security  
1434 requirements from consumers as laid down in those PPs.

1435 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) **can** then be used to determine the responsibilities and actions to provide  
1436 evidence that is necessary to support the evaluation of the TOE against these requirements. It also  
1437 defines the content and presentation of that evidence.

### 1438 **5.2.4 Technical working groups**

1439 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is intended to support technical working groups in preparing and developing  
1440 PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, packages and supporting documents or guidance. Technical  
1441 working groups **can** be composed of stakeholders including consumers (risk owners), developers,  
1442 evaluators, and academics.

### 1443 **5.2.5 Evaluators**

1444 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) contains criteria to be used by evaluators when forming judgements about  
1445 the conformance of TOEs, STs, PPs and PP-Configurations to their security requirements. ISO/IEC  
1446 15408 (all parts) describes the general set of actions the evaluator is to carry out.

1447 NOTE ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not specify procedures to be followed in carrying out those actions.  
1448 More information on these procedures **may** be found in 13.

### 1449 **5.2.6 Others**

1450 While ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is oriented towards specification and evaluation of the IT security  
1451 properties of TOEs, it **can** also be useful as reference material to all parties with an interest in or  
1452 responsibility for IT security. Some of the additional interest groups that **can** benefit from information  
1453 contained in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) are:

- 1454 a) system custodians and system security officers responsible for determining and meeting  
1455 organizational IT security policies and requirements;
- 1456 b) auditors, both internal and external, responsible for assessing the adequacy of the security of an  
1457 IT solution (which **may** consist of or contain a TOE);
- 1458 c) security architects and designers responsible for the specification of security properties of IT  
1459 products;
- 1460 d) accreditors responsible for accepting an IT solution for use within a particular environment;
- 1461 e) sponsors of evaluation responsible for requesting and supporting an evaluation;
- 1462 f) evaluation authorities responsible for the management and oversight of IT security evaluation  
1463 programs; and
- 1464 g) academia who perform research on the topic of IT security.

1465

1466

1467 Table 1 presents, for each of the audience groupings, how the parts of ISO/IEC 15408 are of interest.  
1468

**Table 1 — Road map to the “Evaluation criteria for IT security”**

	<b>Consumers (Risk owners)</b>	<b>Developers</b>	<b>Technical working groups</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>Others</b>
<b>Part 1</b>	<p><b>Should</b> use for background information, reference purposes, and for guidance on the structure of PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, STs and composition.</p> <p><b>Shall</b> use for the development of security specifications and security problem definitions for TOEs.</p>	<p><b>Should</b> use for background information, reference purposes, and for guidance on the structure of PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, STs and composition.</p> <p><b>Shall</b> use for the development of security specifications for TOEs.</p>	<p><b>Should</b> use for background information, reference purposes, and for guidance on the structure of PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, STs and composition.</p> <p><b>Shall</b> use for the development of security specifications for packages, PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations.</p>	<p><b>Should</b> use for background information, reference purposes, and for guidance on the structure of PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, STs and composition.</p> <p><b>Shall</b> use when evaluating PPs, PP-Configurations and STs.</p>	<p><b>May</b> use for background information, reference purposes, and for guidance on the structure of PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, STs and composition.</p>
<b>Part 2</b>	<p><b>Shall</b> use for guidance and reference when formulating statements of security functional components for their risk-environment.</p>	<p><b>Shall</b> use for reference when interpreting statements of security functional components in packages, PPs and PP-Modules.</p> <p><b>Shall</b> use when developing STs.</p> <p><b>May</b> use when formulating security functionality for IT products.</p>	<p><b>Shall</b> use for reference when formulating statements of security functional components in packages, PPs and PP-Modules.</p>	<p><b>Shall</b> use for reference when evaluating security functional components given in packages, PPs and PPP-modules or security functional requirements in STs.</p>	<p><b>May</b> use for reference when reviewing security functional components given in packages, PPs and PP-Modules or security functional requirements in STs.</p>

	<b>Consumers (Risk owners)</b>	<b>Developers</b>	<b>Technical working groups</b>	<b>Evaluators</b>	<b>Others</b>
<b>Part 3</b>	<p>Shall use for guidance and reference when determining the security assurance required for their risk-environment.</p>	<p>Shall use for reference when interpreting statements of security assurance components in packages, PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations.</p> <p>Shall use when developing STs</p> <p>May use when formulating or improving development processes.</p>	<p>Shall use for reference when formulating statements of security assurance components in packages, PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations.</p>	<p>Shall use for reference when evaluating security functional components given in packages, PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations or security assurance requirements in STs.</p>	<p>May use for reference when reviewing security functional components given in packages, PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations or security assurance requirements in STs.</p>
<b>Part 4</b>	<p>Should use for reference and background information in the structure of evaluation method(s) and/or activities.</p>	<p>Should use for reference purposes and for guidance in the structure of evaluation method(s) and/or activities.</p>	<p>Should use for reference purposes and for guidance in the structure of evaluation methods and activities.</p>	<p>Should use for reference purposes and for guidance in the structure of evaluation methods and activities.</p> <p>Should use when formulating specific evaluation methods and activities.</p>	<p>May use for reference purposes and for guidance in the structure of evaluation methods and activities.</p>

	Consumers (Risk owners)	Developers	Technical working groups	Evaluators	Others
Part 5	Should use for reference in determining the contents of any claimed pre-defined packages of security requirements.	<p>Shall use when developing STs claiming conformance to pre-defined packages of security requirements.</p> <p>Shall use for reference when preparing a TOE for evaluation conformant to pre-defined packages of security requirements.</p>	Shall use when developing PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations claiming conformance to pre-defined packages of security requirements.	Shall use for reference when evaluating PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations or STs claiming conformance to pre-defined packages of security requirements.	May use for reference in determining the contents of any claimed pre-defined packages of security requirements.

1469 **5.3 The Target of Evaluation (TOE)**

1470 **5.3.1 General**

1471 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is flexible in what to evaluate and is therefore not tied to the boundaries of IT  
 1472 products as commonly understood. Therefore, in the context of evaluation ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts)  
 1473 uses the term “TOE” (Target of Evaluation).

1474 While there are cases where a TOE consists of a complete IT product, this need not be the case. The TOE  
 1475 may be an IT product, a part of an IT product, a set of IT products, a unique technology that may never  
 1476 be made into a product, or a combination of these.

1477 As far as ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is concerned, the precise relation between the TOE and any IT  
 1478 products is only important in one aspect: the evaluation of a TOE containing only part of an IT product  
 1479 should not be misrepresented as the evaluation of the entire IT product.

1480 **EXAMPLE**

1481 Examples of TOEs include devices characterized by few interfaces, reduced attack surface, and a well-known  
 1482 supply chain:

- 1483 — A network device;
- 1484 — A software application;
- 1485 — An operating system;
- 1486 — A virtualization system;
- 1487 — An integrated circuit;
- 1488 — The cryptographic co-processor of an integrated circuit;
- 1489 — An application for a mobile device;
- 1490 — A database application excluding the remote client software normally associated with that database  
 1491 application.

1492 TOEs can also be more complex, characterized by a large interface/large interfaces and/or number of  
 1493 components, multiple manufacturing/integration phases, field upgradeable products such as:

- 1494 — A Local Area Network (LAN) including all terminals, servers, network equipment and software;

- 1495 — A mobile device;
- 1496 — Gateways and hubs;
- 1497 — A software application in combination with an operating system;
- 1498 — A multi-function device, such as a multi-function printer;
- 1499 — A Hardware Security Module (HSM).

1500 **5.3.2 TOE Boundaries**

1501 The concept of a TOE boundary is fundamental to the specification of the ST.

1502 A TOE **may** be a complete IT product (or products), a part of an IT product, or made up of various  
1503 components. The ST **shall** clearly outline the physical and logical scope of the TOE as it is delivered to  
1504 the customer.

1505 Any parts of an IT product that are not within the TOE boundary are outside the scope of the evaluation  
1506 and are called *non-TOE parts of the IT product*.

1507 **5.3.3 Different representations of the TOE**

1508 In ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), a TOE **can** occur in several representations in relationship with the  
1509 assurance criteria:

1510 NOTE These assurance criteria include testing (ATE) and vulnerability analysis (AVA), which require TOE  
1511 samples, some design (ADV\_IMP), which require an implementation representation, for instance source code, and  
1512 lifecycle (ALC), which requires the TOE's configuration list.

1513 EXAMPLE

1514 TOE representations for a software TOE:

- 1515 — a list of files in a configuration management system;
- 1516 — a single master copy, that has just been compiled;
- 1517 — the source code for a specific version of an open-source distribution;
- 1518 — a box containing physical media and a manual, ready to be shipped to a customer;
- 1519 — a binary file available for secure download;
- 1520 — an installed and operational version.

1521 TOE representations for a hardware TOE:

- 1522 — Integrated circuit layout;
- 1523 — Memory mappings;
- 1524 — Wafers;
- 1525 — Modules.

1526 All of these are considered to be a TOE and wherever the term "TOE" is used in ISO/IEC 15408 (all  
1527 parts), the context determines the representation that is meant.

1528 **5.3.4 Different configurations of the TOE**

1529 In general, IT products **can** be configured in many ways with different options enabled or disabled.  
1530 During an evaluation performed in accordance with ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), it will be determined  
1531 whether a TOE meets certain requirements. The flexibility in configuration **can** lead to problems since  
1532 all possible configurations of the TOE **must** meet the requirements. For these reasons, it is often the  
1533 case that the guidance part of the TOE constrains the possible configurations of the TOE. That is, the  
1534 guidance for the TOE **can** be different from the general guidance of the IT product.

1535 EXAMPLE 1

1536 An operating system IT product: This product **can** be configured in many ways including the types of  
 1537 users, number of users, types of external connections allowed/disallowed, options enabled/disabled  
 1538 etc.

1539 In general, if an IT product contains or is a TOE then the configuration of the product will need to be  
 1540 much more tightly controlled, since some configuration options **can** lead to a TOE not meeting the  
 1541 requirements.

1542 EXAMPLE 2

- 1543 — allow all types of external connections,
- 1544 — the system administrator does not need to be authenticated.

1545 For this reason, there would be an expected difference between the guidance documentation for the  
 1546 general IT product, that **can** allow many configurations; and the guidance documentation for the TOE,  
 1547 that **may** allow only one or only a set of configurations that do not differ in security-relevant ways.

1548 NOTE If the guidance documentation for the TOE allows more than one configuration, these configurations  
 1549 are collectively called “the TOE” and each configuration **must** meet the requirements levied on the TOE.

### 1550 5.3.5 Operational environment of the TOE

1551 Everything outside the TOE boundary belongs to the TOE operational environment. In the case where  
 1552 the TOE is part of an IT product the IT product **can** have non-TOE parts. Such non-TOE parts are also  
 1553 part of the operational environment of the TOE.

1554 The ST **shall** describe assumptions and define security objectives for the operational environment  
 1555 which together with the security functionality provided by the TOE itself are necessary to mitigate the  
 1556 threats, and to enforce organizational security policies.

1557 The security objectives for the operational environment **may** support the TOE security functionality.

1558 The ST **shall** formulate clear requirements for the TOE environment in order to provide the user  
 1559 sufficient information to use the evaluated TOE properly.

1560 EXAMPLE

1561 Secure key generation and injection premises and processes is an example of a security objective for the  
 1562 operational environment which supports the TOE cryptographic services specified using FCS components from  
 1563 ISO/IEC15408-2.

## 1564 5.4 Presentation of material in this document

1565 The general model is presented in 6 which explains the concepts relating to the evaluation of the  
 1566 security functionality of IT products, the definition of the security problem and the specification of  
 1567 security requirements addressing the security problem. Concepts relating to the specification of  
 1568 security requirements, packages, PPs, PP-Modules and PP-Configurations, that relate to the needs of  
 1569 risk-owners with similar security problems are introduced.

1570 The means of specifying security requirements and the completion of security components provided in  
 1571 ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 is explained in 7 and 8.

1572 The requirements and recommendations for the core constructs of packages, PPs, PP-Modules, PP-  
 1573 Configurations and ST s, are explained in Clauses 9, 10, 11 and 11.3.3.

1574 The requirements and recommendations for evaluation and evaluation results for TOEs, STs, PPs and  
 1575 PP-Configurations are found in 13.

1576 Finally, the topic of composing assurance is found in 14.

1577

1578 **6 General model**

1579 **6.1 Background**

1580 This Clause 6 presents the general concepts used throughout ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), including the  
1581 context in which the concepts are to be used and the approach for applying the concepts. ISO/IEC  
1582 15408-2, ISO/IEC 15408-3, ISO/IEC 15408-4, and ISO/IEC 15408-5 expand on the use of these  
1583 concepts, and assume that the approach described here is used. Further, for users of ISO/IEC 15408 (all  
1584 parts) who intend to perform evaluation activities, ISO/IEC 18045 is applicable.

1585 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) discusses security using a set of security concepts and terminology. An  
1586 understanding of these concepts and the terminology is a prerequisite to the effective use of ISO/IEC  
1587 15408 (all parts). However, the concepts themselves are quite general and are not intended to restrict  
1588 the class of IT security problems to which ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is applicable. Clause 6 assumes that  
1589 the reader has knowledge of IT security and it is not intended to act as a tutorial in this area.

1590 **6.2 Assets and security controls**

1591 Security is concerned with the protection of assets within the operational environment.

1592 EXAMPLE 1

1593 An example of an asset is the contents of a file or a server.

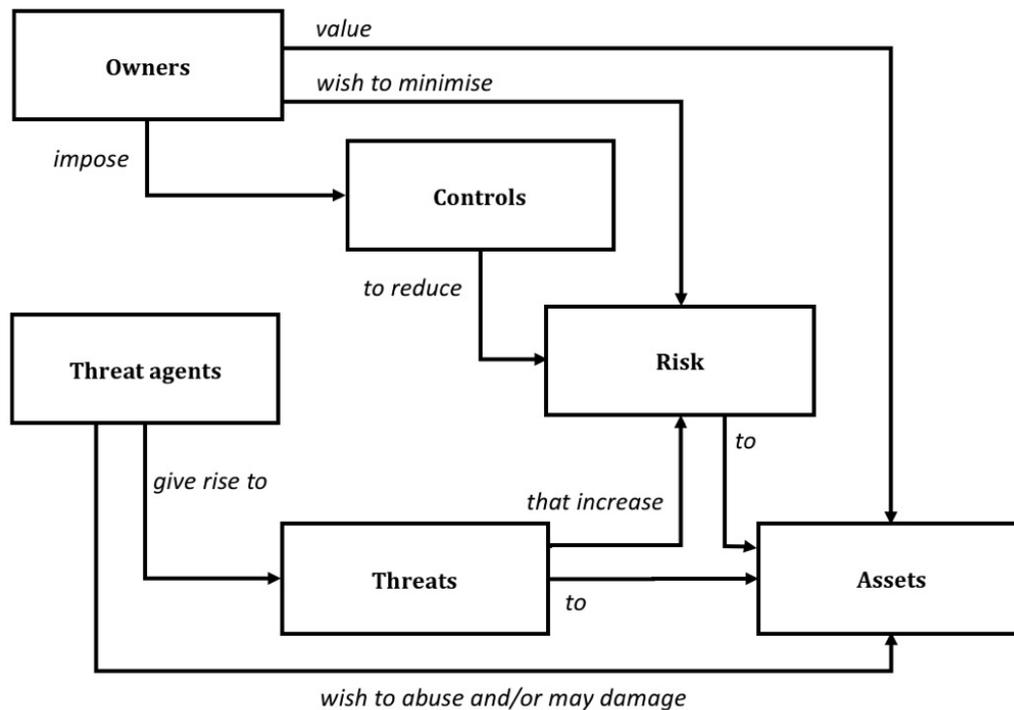
1594 Examples of operational environments are:

- 1595 — a data center;
- 1596 — a computer network connected to the Internet;
- 1597 — a LAN;
- 1598 — the every-day environment of a user;
- 1599 — a general office environment.

1600 Many assets are in the form of information that is stored, processed, and transmitted by IT products to  
1601 meet requirements laid down by owners of the information. Information owners **may** require that  
1602 availability, dissemination, and modification of any such information are strictly controlled and that the  
1603 assets are protected from threats by security controls implemented in the operational environment.  
1604 Figure 1 illustrates these high-level concepts and relationships.

1605 NOTE ISO/IEC 27001 provides requirements for establishing, implementing, maintaining and continually  
1606 improving an information security management system including the specification of controls.

1607



**Figure 1 — Evaluation concepts and relationships**

1608

1609 Safeguarding assets of interest is the responsibility of owners who place value on those assets. Actual or  
 1610 presumed threat agents **can** also place value on the assets and seek to abuse assets in a manner  
 1611 contrary to the interests of the owner.

1612 EXAMPLE 2

1613 Examples of threat agents include hackers, malicious users, non-malicious users, who sometimes make errors,  
 1614 computer processes and accidents.

1615 The owners of the assets will perceive such threats as a potential source of impairment of the assets,  
 1616 leading to a decrease of their value. Security-specific impairment commonly includes but is not limited  
 1617 to: loss of asset confidentiality, loss of asset integrity and loss of asset availability.

1618 These threats therefore give rise to risks to the assets, based on the likelihood of a threat being realized  
 1619 and the impact on the assets when that threat is realized. Subsequently controls are imposed to reduce  
 1620 the risks to assets. These controls **can** consist of IT-related controls (such as firewalls and smart cards)  
 1621 and non-IT controls (such as guards and procedures). See also ISO/IEC 27001 and ISO/IEC 27002 for a  
 1622 more general discussion on security controls and how to implement and manage them.

1623 Owners of assets **can** be held responsible for those assets and therefore **should** be able to defend the  
 1624 decision to accept the risks of exposing the assets to the threats.

1625 Two important elements in defending this decision are being able to demonstrate that:

- 1626 — the controls are sufficient: if the applied controls do what they claim to do, the threats to the  
 1627 assets are countered;
- 1628 — the controls are correct: That is, the applied controls do what they claim to do.

1629 Many owners of assets lack the knowledge, expertise, or resources necessary to judge sufficiency and  
1630 correctness of the security controls, and they **may** not wish to rely solely on the assertions of the  
1631 developers of the security controls. These consumers **can** therefore choose to increase their confidence  
1632 in the sufficiency and correctness of some or all of their security controls by ordering an evaluation of  
1633 these security controls.

1634 Figure 2 describes the evaluation concepts and relationships discussed in this Clause 6.

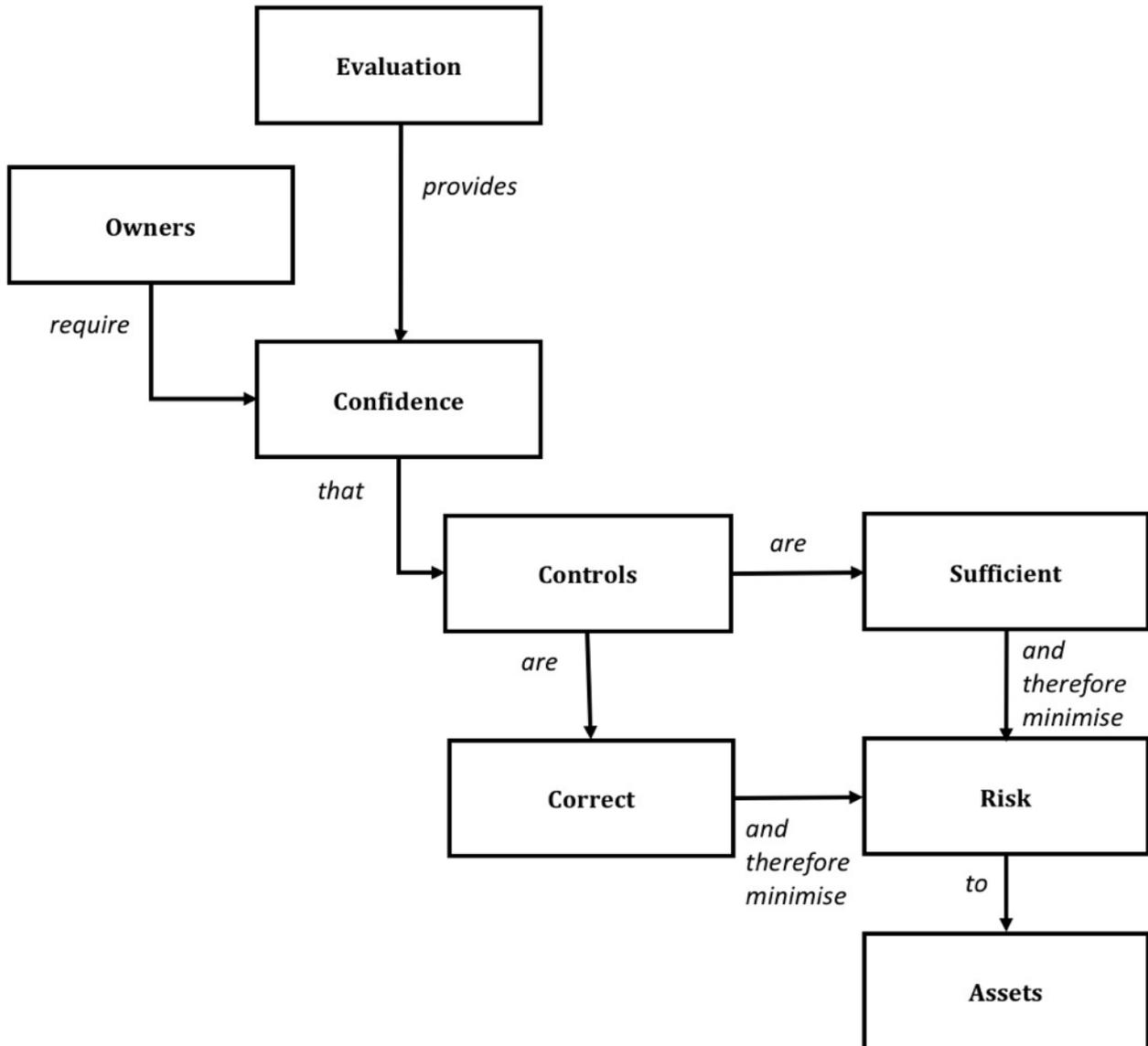


Figure 2 — Evaluation concepts and relationships

1635 In an evaluation, the sufficiency of the security controls is analysed through a construct called the  
1636 Security Target (ST).

### 1637 **6.3 Core constructs of the ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) paradigm**

#### 1638 **6.3.1 General**

1639 *The ISO/IEC 15408 series defines a flexible framework for the evaluation of IT products.*

1640 To allow consumer groups and technical communities to express their security needs, and to facilitate  
1641 authoring appropriate documents that express these needs, five constructs: STs, packages, PPs, PP-  
1642 Modules and PP-Configurations are provided in the paradigm.

1643 STs, PP-Modules, PPs and PP-Configurations **shall** specify a conformance type. This document specifies  
1644 three conformance types; demonstrable, strict, and exact. Conformance types and associated  
1645 requirements **shall** be described in detail in Annex E.

1646 *As this evaluation may need to meet varying assurance needs of consumers (risk owners), the standard  
1647 provides different tools, including: well-formed security components (ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC  
1648 15408-3) as well as a mechanism to define extended assurance components (ISO/IEC 15408-1).  
1649 Predefined packages including those for evaluation assurance levels (ISO/IEC 15408-5), a framework  
1650 for defining evaluation methods and activities (ISO/IEC 15408-4) and a companion evaluation  
1651 methodology (ISO/IEC 18045).*

#### 1652 **6.3.2 Security Targets**

##### 1653 **6.3.2.1 General**

1654 Subclause 6.3.2 presents a simplified view of the ST construct. A more detailed and complete  
1655 description of the ST concept and the content requirements **shall** be found in Clause 11.3.3 and Annex D.  
1656 ISO/IEC 15408-3 provides evaluation criteria, and specific requirements for STs undergoing evaluation.

##### 1657 **6.3.2.2 The purpose of a ST**

1658 The ST is a key document that begins with determining the security problem definition (SPD) for the  
1659 TOE. This includes specifying the assets to be protected and the threats to those assets. The ST then  
1660 considers any relevant assumptions and describes the security controls that need to be in place in order  
1661 to demonstrate that these threats are countered. If the security controls do what they claim to do, the  
1662 threats are countered.

1663 The two groups of security controls are:

- 1664 a) the security objectives for the TOE: these describe the security control(s) for which correctness  
1665 will be determined in the evaluation;
- 1666 b) the security objectives for the operational environment: these describe the security controls for  
1667 which correctness will not be determined in the evaluation.

1668 The reasons for this division are:

1669 — ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) is only suitable for assessing the correctness of IT security controls.  
1670 Therefore, the non-IT security controls are always in the operational environment.

1671 **EXAMPLE** Non-IT security controls include human fences, security guards, procedures.

1672 — Assessing the correctness of security controls costs time and money, possibly making it  
1673 infeasible to assess the correctness of all IT security controls.

1674 — The correctness of some IT security controls **may** already have been assessed in another  
1675 evaluation. It is therefore not cost-effective to assess this correctness again.

1676 The ST further details the security objectives for the TOE by means of specifying Security Functional  
1677 Requirements (SFRs). These SFRs are formulated in a standardized language (described in ISO/IEC  
1678 15408-2) to ensure precision and facilitate comparability.

1679 In summary, the ST demonstrates that:

- 1680 — The SFRs meet the security objectives for the TOE;
- 1681 — The security objectives for the TOE and the security objectives for the operational  
1682 environment counter the threats;
- 1683 — And therefore, the SFRs and the security objectives for the operational environment counter  
1684 the threats.

1685 From this it follows that a correct TOE, i.e. A TOE that meets the SFRs, in combination with a correct  
1686 operational environment, i.e. one that meets the security objectives for the operational environment,  
1687 will counter the threats. In the next two subclauses correctness of the TOE and correctness of the  
1688 operational environment are discussed separately.

1689 In some cases, defining a Security Target that omits security objectives and directly maps the SFRs to  
1690 the security problem definition (SPD) is appropriate. This is a “Direct Rationale” ST, and is explained in  
1691 detail in Clause 11.3.3 and Annex D.

1692 A ST may be defined as standalone document for a specific TOE or may comply with one or more pre-  
1693 existent PP-Configurations or PP(s). These documents allow for generic definitions of a TOE type to be  
1694 made allowing for comparability in evaluation results between TOEs as well as efficiencies to be made.

1695 PPs, PP-Configurations, PP modules and packages that may contribute to the specification of a ST are  
1696 introduced in 6.3.3.1, 6.3.3.2 and 6.3.3.3.

#### 1697 **6.3.2.3 Correctness of the TOE**

1698 A TOE **can** be incorrectly designed and implemented and therefore contain errors that lead to  
1699 vulnerabilities. By exploiting these vulnerabilities, attackers **could** be able to damage and/or abuse the  
1700 assets.

1701 These vulnerabilities **can** arise from poor design, accidental errors made during development,  
1702 intentional addition of malicious code, poor configuration management etc.

1703 To determine the correctness of the TOE, various activities **may** be performed such as:

- 1704 — testing the TOE;
- 1705 — examining various design representations of the TOE;
- 1706 — examining the physical security of the development environment of the TOE.

1707 The ST provides a structured description of these activities to determine correctness in the form of  
1708 Security Assurance Requirements (SARs). These SARs are formulated in a standardized language  
1709 described in ISO/IEC 15408-3 to ensure precision and facilitate comparability.

1710 If the SARs are met, there exists assurance in the correctness of the TOE and the TOE is therefore less  
1711 likely to contain vulnerabilities that **can** be exploited by attackers. The amount of assurance that exists  
1712 in the correctness of the TOE is determined by the SARs themselves.

#### 1713 **6.3.2.4 Correctness of the operational environment**

1714 The operational environment **could** also be incorrectly specified or implemented and therefore contain  
1715 errors that lead to vulnerabilities. By exploiting these vulnerabilities, attackers **could** damage and/or  
1716 abuse the assets.

1717 However, in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), no assurance is obtained regarding the correctness of the  
1718 operational environment. Or, in other words, the operational environment is not evaluated.

1719 As far as the evaluation is concerned, the operational environment is assumed to be a correct  
1720 instantiation of the security objectives for the operational environment.

1721 This does not preclude a consumer of the TOE from using other methods to determine the correctness  
1722 of his operational environment.

1723 EXAMPLE

1724 If, for an Operating System TOE, the security objectives for the operational environment state “The operational  
 1725 environment **must** ensure that entities from an untrusted network can only access the TOE using the FTP  
 1726 protocol”, the consumer **could** select an evaluated firewall, and configure it to only allow FTP access to the TOE;

1727 NOTE The Internet is an example of an untrusted network

1728 If the security objectives for the operational environment state: “The operational environment shall ensure that all  
 1729 administrative personnel will not behave maliciously”, the consumer **could** adapt his contracts with  
 1730 administrative personnel to include punitive sanctions for malicious behaviour, but this determination is not part  
 1731 of an evaluation using ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) as a basis.

### 1732 6.3.3 Communicating security requirements

#### 1733 6.3.3.1 Packages

1734 Packages describe a set of related security requirements that are frequently used together. Packages are  
 1735 often designed to be re-used bringing some comparability between those PPs, PP-Modules and STs that  
 1736 use them.

1737 Security functional packages **may** be used to define security protocols, or other security functional  
 1738 concepts.

1739 Security assurance packages **may** be used to define the conditions and processes such as specification,  
 1740 design, development, testing and delivery under which the TOE is developed and configured.

1741 Core requirements for packages shall be found in Clause 9 and Annex A provides additional description  
 1742 and requirements about packages. ISO/IEC 15408-3 provides evaluation criteria, and specific  
 1743 requirements for STs and PPs undergoing evaluation that **may** use packages. ISO/IEC 15408-5 provides  
 1744 some pre-defined packages that **may** be used by PP and ST authors.

#### 1745 6.3.3.2 Protection Profiles (PPs)

1746 PPs describe a TOE type and the security assurance requirements (SAR), security functional  
 1747 requirements (SFRs) expected to be provided for that type of TOE.

1748 PPs based on other PPs **may** be used to further refine a TOE type.

1749 PPs **may** take either a standard or a Direct Rationale approach.

1750 Core requirements for PPs shall be found in Clause 10 and Annex B. ISO/IEC 15408-3 provides PPs’  
 1751 evaluation criteria.

#### 1752 6.3.3.3 PP Modules and PP-Configurations

1753 PP-Configurations build upon the concept of PP and PP-Modules.

1754 A PP-Module may be used to refine the generic TOE type of a base PP, or to add security requirements  
 1755 for particular technologies which may be optionally associated with the TOE type defined in the base  
 1756 PPs. PP-Modules may also be based on other PP-Modules. Further, PP-Configurations describe which  
 1757 PPs and PP-Modules may be legitimately combined.

1758 This concept shall be described in more detail in Clause 11 and Annex C.

#### 1759 EXAMPLE

1760 A PP-Module describes the security functional requirements for Bluetooth technology. Another PP-Module  
 1761 describes the security functional requirements for wireless LAN clients. Using a PP-Configuration, the security  
 1762 function requirements for each of these technologies **can** be combined with PPs describing a TOE type, such as an  
 1763 operating system PP, or a mobile device PP. In this context the PP describing the TOE type is referred to as a base  
 1764 PP. A PP-Configuration describes which PPs and PP-Modules are combined to define an implied PP that includes  
 1765 all the requirements given in the PPs and PP-Modules.

1766 In this example it would be possible to specify six PP-Configurations:

- 1767 1. Operating system with Bluetooth,
- 1768 2. Operating system with Wireless client,
- 1769 3. Operating system with Bluetooth and Wireless client,

- 1770 4. Mobile device with Bluetooth,
- 1771 5. Mobile device with Wireless client,
- 1772 6. Mobile device with Bluetooth and Wireless client.

1773 **6.3.4 Meeting the needs of consumers (risk owners)**

1774 **6.3.4.1 General**

1775 In today's world, consumers (risk owners) can have different approaches to the assurance that the  
1776 products they use to address the SPD. Subclauses 6.3.4.2 and 6.3.4.3 introduce these approaches.

1777 **6.3.4.2 Multi-assurance evaluation**

1778 The standard evaluation approach consists in applying a single set of standard assurance requirements  
1779 to the entire TOE. However, the standard also provides a method (ISO/IEC 15408-4) to specialize the  
1780 standard assurance components and evaluation activities and a multi-assurance evaluation framework  
1781 to apply different assurance requirements to different parts of the TSF (sub-TSFs), while enforcing a  
1782 global set of SARs for the entire TOE.

1783 The multi-assurance evaluation paradigm:

- 1784 — addresses heterogeneous IT products where different security needs require a different  
1785 assurance within a single evaluation
- 1786 — ensures that the multiple assurance requirements are sound with regard to the security needs  
1787 for the product.

1788 Technically, a multi-assurance evaluation is driven by a ST that complies with one (and only one) multi-  
1789 assurance PP-Configuration. The multi-assurance PP-Configuration ensures that applying different  
1790 assurance requirements to different parts of the TSF is consistent with their security needs. In this  
1791 evaluation approach, each sub-TSF enforces some security functionality, e.g. an authentication protocol,  
1792 a firewall policy, the boot process, encryption/decryption operations, and in some cases, the sub-TSF  
1793 may be associated with a subset of TOE components, for instance a TPM, a cryptographic library or a  
1794 card reader.

1795 **EXAMPLE**

1796 The multi-assurance paradigm is relevant in particular in the following situations:

- 1797 — A product where some security functionality requires a higher assurance than the rest, for instance, a key  
1798 storage and processing unit, a secure boot module, etc.
- 1799 — A product where some parts of the security functionality do not require the same high evaluation  
1800 assurance as other more exposed parts, for instance an internet gateway with support for personal area  
1801 network protocols.
- 1802 — A family of products where some security functionality is shared across all the products with the same  
1803 assurance, and some security functionality is implemented in different ways for different use cases, for  
1804 instance in a tamper-resistant module or in a software module or through COTS, requiring a different  
1805 assurance.

1806 An example is a family of biometric authentication devices, with either match-on-device or match-on-SE,  
1807 or both. This can give rise to a PP for the authentication device excluding the matching function, and two  
1808 PP-Modules for the different types of matching functions, each with a dedicated set of assurance  
1809 requirements. Three PP-Configurations can be defined for the device: PP with each of the PP-Modules, PP  
1810 with both PP-Modules. A similar situation arises, for instance, for a family of mobile applications which  
1811 uses either software crypto library secured by with-box techniques or a hardware-based crypto library,  
1812 or for a family of payment terminals with either IC and/or magstripe readers.

- 1813 — Multi-assurance is also relevant for products claiming conformance to different PPs with different  
1814 assurance packages: by defining and evaluating a PP-Configuration, the multi-assurance paradigm allows  
1815 better control over possible inconsistencies between these PPs. The evaluation of electronic passports  
1816 implementing both Basic Access Control and Extended Access Control constitutes a typical example, as  
1817 these access control mechanisms are subject to different security problems and assurance requirements.

1818 **Editor's Note:**

1819 The motivation for the multi-assurance evaluation is driven by the risks over the assets in the given threat model  
1820 (see examples above).

1821 The concept does not break or weaken existing CC concepts. It is a true addition to allow the certification of  
1822 products that hold assets with different sensitivity (as in POI PP).

1823 The developer will document each sub-TSF as usual since sub-TSFs are closed by dependencies, objectives, and  
1824 SPD. The vulnerability analysis of each sub-TSF complies with the current definition of AVA\_VAN which considers  
1825 the whole TOE as the attack surface.

1826 This note will be removed in the following draft.

### 1827 6.3.4.3 Conformance types

1828 Three different types of conformance to PPs and PP-Configurations have been defined to meet the  
1829 needs of consumers (risk owners). These are exact, strict and demonstrable conformance. They are  
1830 described in detail in Annex E.

## 1831 7 Specifying security requirements

### 1832 7.1 Security problem definition

#### 1833 7.1.1 Introduction

1834 The SPD defines the security problem that is to be addressed and may appear in PPs, PP-Modules and  
1835 STs. The SPD is, as far as ISO/IEC 15408 is concerned, axiomatic. That is, the process of deriving the SPD  
1836 falls outside the scope of ISO/IEC 15408.

1837 NOTE 1 The usefulness of the results of an evaluation strongly depends on the quality of the SPD. It is  
1838 therefore often worthwhile to spend significant resources and use well-defined processes and analyses to derive a  
1839 good SPD. ISO/IEC 15446 presents guidance in regard to deriving an SPD.

1840 NOTE 2 According to ISO/IEC 15408-3, it is not mandatory to have statements in all sections, a PP with threats  
1841 does not need to have OSPs and vice versa. Also, any PP **could** omit assumptions.

1842 NOTE 3 Where the TOE is physically distributed, it **can** be better to discuss the relevant threats, OSPs and  
1843 assumptions separately for distinct domains of the TOE operational environment.

#### 1844 7.1.2 Threats

1845 This section of the SPD describes the threats that are to be countered by the TOE, its operational  
1846 environment, or a combination of the two.

1847 A threat consists of an adverse action performed by a threat agent on an asset.

1848 Adverse actions influence one or more properties of an asset from which that asset derives its value.

1849 Threat agents **may** be described as individual entities, but in some cases, it **may** be better to describe  
1850 them as types of entities, groups of entities, etc.

#### 1851 EXAMPLE

1852 Examples of threat agents are:

- 1853 — hackers;
- 1854 — users;
- 1855 — computer processes; and
- 1856 — accidents.

1857 Threat agents **can** be further described by attributes such as expertise, resources, opportunity, and motivation.

1858 Examples of threats are:

- 1859 — a hacker (with substantial expertise, standard equipment, and being paid to do so) remotely copying  
1860 confidential files from a company network;
- 1861 — a worm seriously degrading the performance of a wide-area network;

- 1862 — a system administrator violating user privacy; and
- 1863 — someone on the Internet listening in on confidential electronic communication.

### 1864 7.1.3 Organizational security policies (OSPs)

1865 This section of the SPD describes the OSPs that are to be enforced by the TOE, its operational  
1866 environment, or a combination of the two.

1867 OSPs are security rules, procedures, or guidelines imposed (or presumed to be imposed) now and/or in  
1868 the future in the operational environment. OSPs **can** be made by an organization controlling the  
1869 operational environment of the TOE, or they **can** be made by legislative or regulatory bodies. OSPs **can**  
1870 apply to the TOE and/or the operational environment of the TOE.

#### 1871 EXAMPLE

1872 Examples of OSPs are:

- 1873 — All products that are used by the Government must conform to the National Standard for password  
1874 generation and encryption;
- 1875 — Only users with System Administrator privilege and clearance of Department Secret shall be allowed to  
1876 manage the Department Fileserver.

### 1877 7.1.4 Assumptions

1878 This section of the SPD describes the assumptions that are made on the operational environment in order to be  
1879 able to provide security functionality. If the TOE is placed in an operational environment that does not meet these  
1880 assumptions, the TOE **could** be unable to provide all of its security functionality. Assumptions **may** be on physical,  
1881 personnel and connectivity of the operational environment.

#### 1882 EXAMPLE

1883 Examples of assumptions are:

- 1884 — Assumptions on the non-TOE part of the product:
  - 1885 – It is assumed that the TOE will be integrated into a device that provides a hardware-based root of  
1886 trust.
- 1887 — Assumptions on physical aspects of the operational environment:
  - 1888 – It is assumed that the TOE will be placed in a room that is designed to minimize electromagnetic  
1889 emanations;
  - 1890 – It is assumed that the administrator consoles of the TOE will be placed in a restricted access area.
- 1891 — Assumptions on personnel aspects of the operational environment:
  - 1892 – It is assumed that users of the TOE will be trained sufficiently in order to operate the TOE;
  - 1893 – It is assumed that users of the TOE are approved for information that is classified as National Secret;
  - 1894 – It is assumed that users of the TOE will not write down their passwords.
- 1895 — Assumptions on connectivity aspects of the operational environment:
  - 1896 – It is assumed that a PC workstation with at least 10GB of disk space is available to run the TOE on;
  - 1897 – It is assumed that the TOE is the only non-OS application running on this workstation;
  - 1898 – It is assumed that the TOE will not be connected to an untrusted network.

1899 NOTE During an evaluation these assumptions are considered to be true: they are not tested in any way. For  
1900 these reasons, assumptions **can** only be made on the operational environment. Assumptions **can** never be made on  
1901 the behaviour of the TOE because an evaluation consists of evaluating assertions made about the TOE and not by  
1902 assuming that assertions on the TOE are true. Nevertheless, the ST, PP and PP-Configuration evaluations should  
1903 detect unrealistic assumptions for the type of TOE and operational environment, which may become  
1904 unacceptable.

1905 **7.2 Security objectives**

1906 **7.2.1 General**

1907 The security objectives are a concise statement of the intended solution to the security problem. The  
1908 role of the security objectives is threefold:

- 1909 — provide a high-level, natural language solution of the problem. The security objectives  
1910 consist of a set of statements without overly much detail that together form a high-level  
1911 solution to the security problem. The level of abstraction of the security objectives aims at  
1912 being clear and understandable to knowledgeable potential consumers of the TOE. The  
1913 security objectives are in natural language;
- 1914 — divide this solution into two part-wise solutions, that reflect the roles of the TOE and its  
1915 operational environment to address each part of the problem. In a ST the high-level security  
1916 solution, as described by the security objectives, is divided into two part-wise solutions.  
1917 These part-wise solutions are called the security objectives for the TOE and the security  
1918 objectives for the operational environment;
- 1919 — demonstrate that these part-wise solutions form a complete solution to the problem.

1920 **7.2.2 Security objectives for the TOE**

1921 The TOE provides security functionality to solve a certain part of the problem defined by the security  
1922 problem definition. This part-wise solution is called the security objectives for the TOE and consists of a  
1923 set of objectives that the TOE **shall** achieve in order to solve its part of the problem.

1924 EXAMPLE

1925 Examples of security objectives for the TOE are:

- 1926 — The TOE shall keep confidential the content of all files transmitted between it and a Server;
- 1927 — The TOE shall identify and authenticate all users before allowing them access to the Transmission Service  
1928 provided by the TOE;
- 1929 — The TOE shall restrict user access to data according to the Data Access policy described in Annex 3 of the  
1930 PP.

1931 If the TOE is physically distributed, it **may** be better to subdivide the section containing the security  
1932 objectives for the TOE into several subsections to reflect this.

1933 NOTE In Direct Rationale STs security objectives for the TOE are not included: See D.4.

1934 **7.2.3 Security objectives for the operational environment**

1935 The operational environment of the TOE implements technical and procedural measures to assist the  
1936 TOE in correctly providing its security functionality (which is defined by the security objectives for the  
1937 TOE). This pair-wise solution is called the security objectives for the operational environment and  
1938 consists of a set of statements describing the goals that the operational environment **shall** achieve.

1939 EXAMPLE

1940 Examples of security objectives for the operational environment are:

- 1941 — The operational environment **shall** provide a workstation with the OS Linux version 3.01b to execute the  
1942 TOE on;
- 1943 — The operational environment **shall** ensure that all human TOE users receive appropriate training before  
1944 allowing them to work with the TOE;
- 1945 — The operational environment of the TOE **shall** restrict physical access to the TOE to administrative  
1946 personnel and maintenance personnel accompanied by administrative personnel;
- 1947 — The operational environment **shall** ensure the confidentiality of the audit logs generated by the TOE  
1948 before sending them to the central Audit Server.

1949 If the operational environment of the TOE consists of multiple physical sites, each with different  
 1950 properties, it **may** be better to subdivide the section containing the security objectives for the  
 1951 operational environment into several sub-sections to reflect this.

1952 Third party components that **cannot** be evaluated due to unavailability of evaluation evidence are  
 1953 included in the operational environment, and the security objectives for the operational environment  
 1954 **shall** include that the third-party component works as intended.

1955 **7.2.4 Relation between security objectives and the SPD**

1956 The ST also contains a security objectives rationale containing two sections:

- 1957 — a tracing that shows which security objectives address which SPD-elements (threats, OSPs  
 1958 and assumptions);
- 1959 — a set of justifications that shows that all SPD-elements are effectively addressed by the  
 1960 security objectives.

1961 NOTE In Direct Rationale PPs a security objectives Rationale is not included: See D.4.

1962 EXAMPLE

1963 A threat “T17: Threat agent X reads the Confidential Information in transit between A and B”, a security objective  
 1964 for the TOE: “OT12: The TOE shall ensure that all information transmitted between A and B is kept confidential”,  
 1965 and a demonstration “T17 is directly countered by OT12”.

1966 **7.2.5 Tracing between security objectives and the SPD**

1967 The tracing shows how the security objectives trace back to the threats, OSPs and assumptions as  
 1968 described in the SPD.

- 1969 a) *No spurious objectives*: Each security objective traces to at least one SPD-element (threat, OSP or  
 1970 assumption).
- 1971 b) *Complete with respect to the security problem definition*: Each SPD-element has at least one  
 1972 security objective tracing to it.
- 1973 c) *Correct tracing*: Since assumptions are always made by the TOE on the operational  
 1974 environment, security objectives for the TOE do not trace back to assumptions. The tracings  
 1975 allowed by ISO/IEC 15408-3 are depicted in Figure 3.

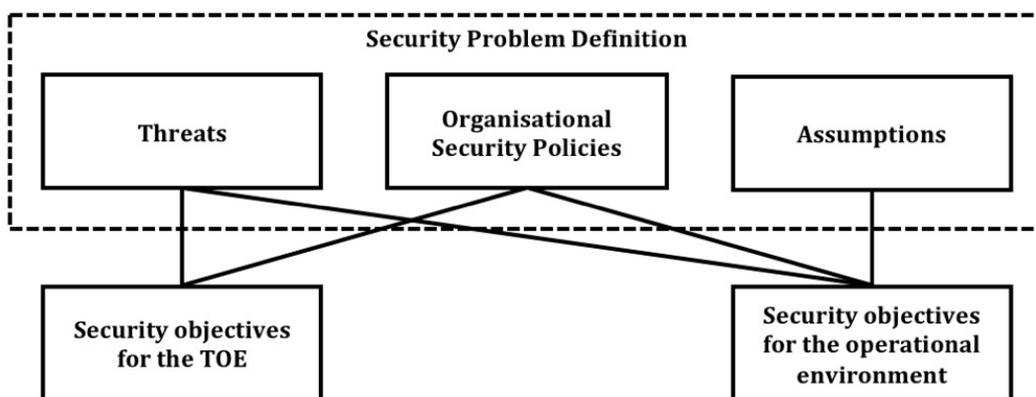


Figure 3 — Tracings between security objectives and the SPD

1976 Multiple security objectives **may** trace to the same threat, indicating that the combination of those  
1977 security objectives counters that threat. A similar argument holds for OSPs and assumptions.

## 1978 **7.2.6 Providing a justification for the tracing**

1979 The security objectives rationale also demonstrates that the tracing is effective: All the given threats,  
1980 OSPs and assumption are addressed (i.e. countered, enforced, and upheld respectively) if all security  
1981 objectives tracing to a particular threat, OSP or assumption are achieved.

1982 This demonstration analyses the effect of achieving the relevant security objectives on countering the  
1983 threats, enforcing the OSPs and upholding the assumptions and leads to the conclusion that this is  
1984 indeed the case.

1985 In some cases, where parts of the SPD very closely resemble some security objectives, the  
1986 demonstration may be straightforward.

## 1987 **7.2.7 On countering threats**

1988 Countering a threat does not necessarily mean removing that threat, it **may** also mean sufficiently  
1989 diminishing that threat or sufficiently mitigating that threat.

### 1990 EXAMPLE

1991 Examples of removing a threat are:

- 1992 — removing the ability to execute the adverse action from the threat agent;
- 1993 — moving, changing, or protecting the asset in such a way that the adverse action is no longer applicable to  
1994 it;
- 1995 — removing the threat agent;  
1996 E.g. removing machines from a network that frequently crash that network.

1997 Examples of diminishing a threat are:

- 1998 — restricting the ability of a threat agent to perform adverse actions;
- 1999 — restricting the opportunity to execute an adverse action of a threat agent;
- 2000 — reducing the likelihood of an executed adverse action being successful;
- 2001 — reducing the motivation to execute an adverse action of a threat agent by deterrence;
- 2002 — requiring greater expertise or greater resources from the threat agent.

2003 Examples of mitigating the effects of a threat are:

- 2004 — making frequent back-ups of the asset;
- 2005 — obtaining spare copies of an asset;
- 2006 — insuring an asset;
- 2007 — ensuring that successful adverse actions are always timely detected, so that appropriate action can be  
2008 taken.

## 2009 **7.2.8 Security objectives: conclusion**

2010 Based on the security objectives and the security objectives rationale, the following conclusion is  
2011 drawn: if all security objectives are achieved then the security problem as defined in Security problem  
2012 definition (ASE\_SPD) is solved: all threats are countered, all OSPs are enforced, and all assumptions are  
2013 upheld.

## 2014 **7.3 Security requirements**

### 2015 **7.3.1 General**

2016 As mentioned in clauses 6.3.2 and 6.3.3, packages, PPs, PP-Modules and STs specify the detailed security  
2017 requirements applicable to a TOE that have been derived from the stated SPD. Security functional  
2018 requirements and security assurance requirements **shall** be drawn from security components defined  
2019 in ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 respectively, which are a template for security requirements

2020 written in a standardized language. The process of deriving a security requirement from a security  
2021 component involves tailoring the components and is known as “completion”.

2022 NOTE In 7, the term “author” includes authors of STs, PPs, PP-Modules, and packages.

2023 Security requirements are specified as a result of the refinement of the SPD in a ST and possibly PP, PP-  
2024 Module, and packages. Security requirements are specified by a tailoring the components given in  
2025 ISO/IEC 15408-2, ISO/IEC 15408-3 or that have been defined as extended components in accordance  
2026 with 8.4. The tailoring process uses the operations in 7.3.2 and 7.3.3.

2027 NOTE Since a ST specifies the security requirements for a specific TOE it presents only fully completed  
2028 components. PPs, PP-Modules and packages may present uncompleted security components allowing authors  
2029 basing documents upon them appropriate flexibility.

2030 The security requirements consist of two groups of requirements:

2031 a) *the security functional requirements* (SFRs): a translation of the security objectives for the TOE  
2032 into a standardized language;

2033 b) *the security assurance requirements* (SARs): a description of how assurance is to be gained that  
2034 the TOE meets the SFRs.

2035 NOTE SARs concern the adherence of the TOE to the ST. SARs play no role in the coverage of the SPD, which is  
2036 covered by security objectives and security functional requirements.

2037 These two groups are discussed in 7.3.2 and 7.3.3.

## 2038 7.3.2 Security Functional Requirements

### 2039 7.3.2.1 General

2040 The SFRs are a translation of the security objectives for the TOE. They are usually at a more detailed  
2041 level of abstraction, but they have to be a complete translation (the security objectives **shall** be  
2042 completely addressed). ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) requires this translation into a standardized language  
2043 for several reasons:

2044 — to provide a precise description of what is to be evaluated. As security objectives for the  
2045 TOE are usually formulated in natural language, translation into a standardized language  
2046 enforces a more precise description of the functionality of the TOE.

2047 — to allow comparison between two STs. The standardized language enforces using the same  
2048 terminology and concepts. This allows comparison of STs even when authors **use** different  
2049 terminology in describing their SPD and security objectives (this situation does not arise  
2050 when the STs conform to the same PPs/PP-Configurations).

2051 In the context of PPs and PP-Modules, the SFRs **shall** be independent of any specific technical solution  
2052 (implementation).

2053 There is no translation required in this document for the security objectives for the operational  
2054 environment, because the operational environment is not evaluated and does therefore not require a  
2055 description aimed at its evaluation.

2056 NOTE See the bibliography for items relevant to the security assessment of operational systems.

2057 It **can** be the case that parts of the operational environment are evaluated in another evaluation, but  
2058 this is out of scope for the current evaluation.

2059 EXAMPLE

2060 An OS TOE may require a firewall to be present in its operational environment. Another evaluation may  
2061 subsequently evaluate the firewall, but this evaluation has nothing to do with the evaluation of the OS TOE.

### 2062 7.3.2.2 How this translation is supported

2063 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) supports this translation in three ways:

- 2064 a) by providing a pre-defined “language” designed to describe precisely what is to be evaluated.  
 2065 This language is defined as a set of components defined in ISO/IEC 15408-2. The use of this  
 2066 language as a well-defined translation of the security objectives for the TOE to SFRs is  
 2067 mandatory, though some exceptions exist and are given in 8.4.
- 2068 b) by providing operations: mechanisms that allow the author of the package, ST, PP or PP-Module  
 2069 to complete and modify the SFRs to provide a more accurate translation of the security  
 2070 objectives for the TOE or TOE type. This document defines the four allowed operations:  
 2071 assignment, selection, iteration, and refinement. These are described further in 8.2.
- 2072 c) by providing dependencies: a mechanism that supports a more complete translation to SFRs. In  
 2073 ISO/IEC 15408-2 language, an SFR *may* have a dependency on other SFRs. This signifies that if a  
 2074 ST uses that SFR, it generally needs to use those other SFRs as well. This makes it much harder  
 2075 for the ST author to overlook including necessary SFRs and thereby improves the completeness  
 2076 of the ST. Dependencies are described further in 8.3.

### 2077 7.3.2.3 Relation between SFRs and security objectives

2078 PPs, PP-Modules, STs and packages contain a security requirements rationale, consisting of two sections  
 2079 about SFRs:

- 2080 — a tracing that shows which SFRs address which security objectives for the TOE;
- 2081 — a set of justifications that shows that all security objectives for the TOE are effectively  
 2082 addressed by the SFRs.

2083 NOTE In the Direct Rationale approach the tracing and rationale is provided between the SFRs and the SPD.

### 2084 7.3.2.4 Tracing between SFRs and the security objectives for the TOE

2085 The tracing shows how the SFRs trace back to the security objectives for the TOE as follows:

- 2086 a) *No spurious SFRs*: Each SFR traces back to at least one security objective.
- 2087 b) *Complete with respect to the security objectives for the TOE*: Each security objective for the TOE  
 2088 has at least one SFR tracing to it.

2089 Multiple SFRs *may* trace to the same security objective for the TOE, indicating that the combination of  
 2090 those security requirements meets that security objective for the TOE.

### 2091 7.3.2.5 Providing a justification for the tracing

2092 The security requirements rationale demonstrates that the tracing is effective: if all SFRs tracing to a  
 2093 particular security objective for the TOE are satisfied, that security objective for the TOE is achieved.

2094 This demonstration analyses the effects of satisfying the relevant SFRs on achieving the security  
 2095 objective for the TOE and lead to the conclusion that this is indeed the case.

### 2096 7.3.2.6 Types of SFR

#### 2097 7.3.2.6.1 Optional requirements

2098 Optional requirements are “optional” in the sense that they do not need to be included in a ST in order  
 2099 for the PP/ST to claim conformance (of any type) to a PP or PP-Configuration.

2100 Packages, PPs, PP-Modules *may* define optional requirements in one of two categories. Each category is  
 2101 specified explicitly by the author.

2102 The first category of optional requirements is elective. Requirements in this category do not need to be  
 2103 included in a ST in order for the ST to claim conformance (of any type) to the PP. In this case, it is not  
 2104 obligatory that the ST includes the requirement, even if the TOE implements the functionality described  
 2105 by the requirement.

2106 The second category of optional requirements is conditional. If the TOE implements the described  
 2107 functionality then the optional requirement *shall* be included in the ST. If the TOE does not implement  
 2108 the functionality covered by the optional requirement, then the requirement is not included in the ST.

2109 NOTE Optional requirements **can** be written in response to SPD-elements that exist in the package, PP or PP-  
2110 Module, or SPD-elements that are specifically associated with the requirement. Such associations are identified in  
2111 the PP. Direct Rationale PPs do not have security objectives for optional requirements that have associated SPD  
2112 elements, while regular PPs include security objectives for the associated SFRs and SPD elements.

### 2113 7.3.2.6.2 Selection-based requirements

2114 Packages, PPs and PP-Modules **may** identify a set of selection-based SFRs. In this case, the author  
2115 additionally ensures that the package/PP/PP-Module clearly indicates the dependencies between a  
2116 particular selection in a security functional component and/or SFR included in the package/PP/PP-  
2117 Module and the associated selection-based SFR(s) that **shall** be included if that selection is chosen by  
2118 another PP/ST author. This is explained in 8.2.4.2.

### 2119 7.3.3 Security assurance requirements (SARs)

#### 2120 7.3.3.1 General

2121 The SARs are a description of how the TOE is to be evaluated that may be defined in packages, PPs, PP-  
2122 Modules, PP-Configurations and STs. This description uses a standardized language for two reasons:

- 2123 — to provide a precise description of how the TOE is to be evaluated.
- 2124 — to allow comparison between two STs. The standardized language enforces using the same  
2125 terminology and concepts.

2126 This standardized language is defined as a set of components defined in ISO/IEC 15408-3. The use of  
2127 this language is mandatory, though some exceptions exist. ISO/IEC 15408 enhances this language in  
2128 two ways:

- 2129 a) by providing operations: mechanisms that allow the PP/ST author to modify the SARs. ISO/IEC  
2130 15408 has four operations: assignment, selection, iteration, and refinement. These are  
2131 described further in 8.2.
- 2132 b) by providing dependencies: a mechanism that supports a more complete translation to SARs. In  
2133 ISO/IEC 15408-3 language, a SAR **can** have a dependency on other SARs. This signifies that if a  
2134 ST, PP, PP-Module or PP-Configuration uses that SAR, it generally needs to use those other SARs  
2135 as well. This makes it much harder for the author to overlook including necessary SARs and  
2136 thereby improves the completeness of STs, PPs, PP-Modules or PP-Configurations.  
2137 Dependencies are described further in 8.3.

2138 NOTE The SARs defined in ISO/IEC 15408-3 do not allow use assignment or selections. However, it is  
2139 possible to define extended assurance components which allow those operations.

#### 2140 7.3.3.2 SARs and the security requirement rationale

2141 PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations, assurance packages and STs also contain a security requirements  
2142 rationale that explains why the chosen set(s) of SARs was(were) deemed appropriate. There are no  
2143 specific requirements for this explanation. The goal for this explanation is to allow the readers to  
2144 understand the reasons why this particular set was chosen.

2145 NOTE: In the case of exact conformance a PP-Module inherits the SARs from its base PPs hence no rationale for the  
2146 SARs is required.

2147 SARs contribute to the confidence that a risk owner **can** place in an evaluation. Many SARs given in  
2148 ISO/IEC 15408-3 relate to the design and development processes used in the implementation of a TOE  
2149 by a developer and to developer testing. Some SARs relate to an operational TOE such as secure  
2150 delivery process and flaw remediation. Some SARs relate specifically to evaluator vulnerability analysis  
2151 and independent functional and penetration testing.

#### 2152 EXAMPLE

2153 An example of an inconsistency in the selection of SARs is if the SPD mentions threats where the threat agent is  
2154 very capable, and a low (or no) vulnerability analysis (AVA\_VAN) is included in the SARs.

### 2155 7.3.4 Security requirements: conclusion

2156 In the SPD section of the PP, PP-Module, functional package and ST, the security problem is defined as  
 2157 consisting of threats, OSPs and assumptions. In the security objectives section of the ST, the solution is  
 2158 provided in the form of two sub-solutions:

- 2159 — security objectives for the TOE;
- 2160 — security objectives for the operational environment.

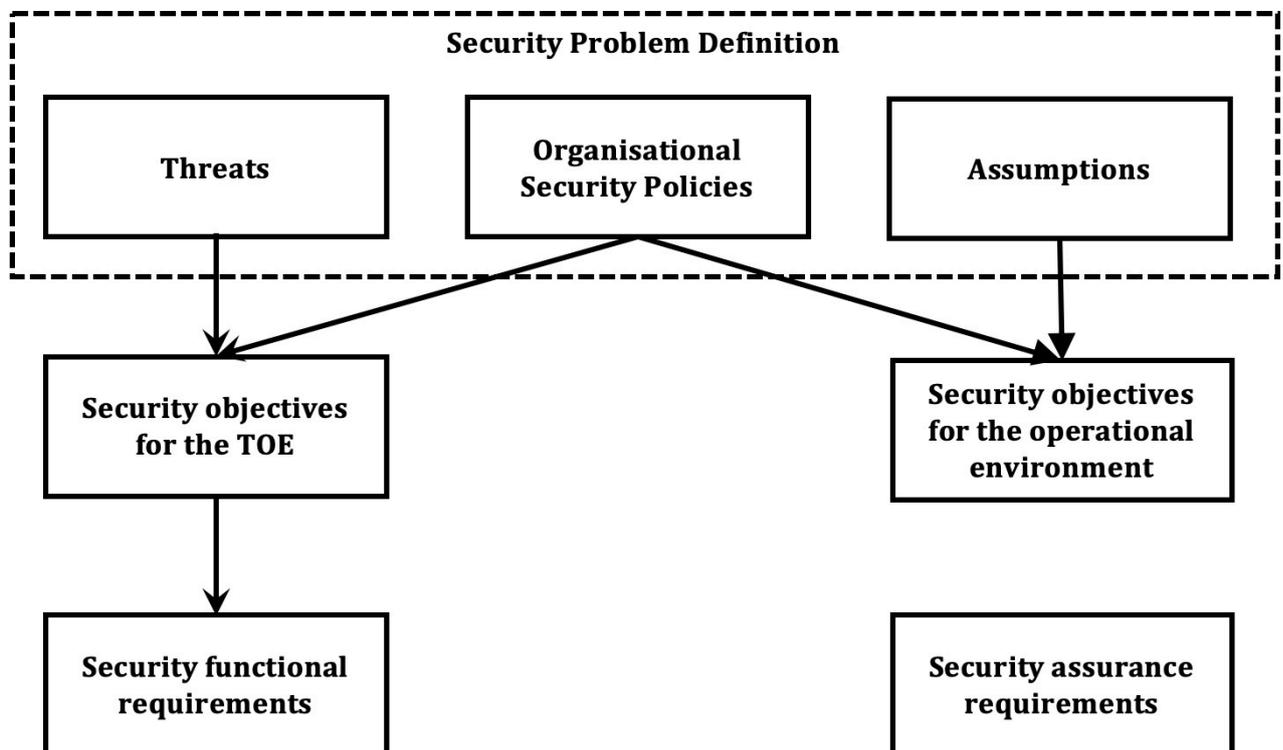
2161 Additionally, a security objectives rationale is provided showing that if all security objectives are  
 2162 achieved, the security problem is solved: all threats are countered, all OSPs are enforced, and all  
 2163 assumptions are upheld.

2164 In the security requirements section, the security objectives for the TOE are translated to SFRs and a  
 2165 security requirements rationale is provided showing that if all SFRs are satisfied, all security objectives  
 2166 for the TOE are achieved.

2167 Additionally, a set of SARs is provided to show how the TOE is evaluated, together with an explanation  
 2168 for selecting these SARs. The set of SARs **shall** be in line with the security expectations derived from the  
 2169 SPD. The explanation for SAR selection **may** be made in the SAR rationale.

2170 The operational environment itself is not within the scope of the evaluation, although when the AGD  
 2171 assurance class is included in a ST then the TOE guidance must fully reflect these security objectives for  
 2172 the operational environment, and is assessed as part of the evaluation using the AGD class.

2173 All of the above are combined into the statement: If all SFRs and SARs are satisfied and all security  
 2174 objectives for the operational environment are achieved, then there exists assurance that the security  
 2175 problem as defined in ASE\_SPD is solved: all threats are countered, all OSPs are enforced, and all  
 2176 assumptions are upheld. This is illustrated in Figure 4.



2177

2178

2179

**Figure 4 — Relations between the SPD, the security objectives, and the security requirements**

2180 The amount of assurance obtained is defined by the SARs, and whether this amount of assurance is  
 2181 sufficient to risk-owners using the ST is described in the explanation given for choosing these SARs.

## 2182 **8 Security components**

### 2183 **8.1 Hierarchical structure of security components**

#### 2184 **8.1.1 General**

2185 ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 provide catalogues of security components that **shall** be used  
2186 when specifying security requirements. The catalogues have organized the components into a  
2187 hierarchical structure at four levels:

- 2188 — Classes, consisting of
- 2189 — Families, consisting of
- 2190 — Components, consisting of
- 2191 — Elements, which cannot be decomposed.

#### 2192 **8.1.2 Class**

2193 The requirements for functional classes are given in ISO/IEC 15408-2 subclause 6.1.2.

2194 A class consists of a set of families.

##### 2195 EXAMPLE

2196 An example of a class is the “FIA: Identification and authentication” class that is focused at identification of users,  
2197 authentication of users and binding of users and subjects.

#### 2198 **8.1.3 Family**

2199 The requirements for functional families are provided in ISO/IEC 15408-2 subclause 6.1.3.

2200 A family consists of a set of components.

##### 2201 EXAMPLE

2202 An example of a family is the “User authentication (FIA\_UAU)” family which is part of the “FIA: Identification and  
2203 authentication class”. This family concentrates on the authentication of users.

#### 2204 **8.1.4 Component**

2205 The requirements for functional component structure are provided in ISO/IEC 15408-2 subclause 6.1.4.

2206 A component consists of a set of elements.

##### 2207 EXAMPLE

2208 An example of a component is “FIA\_UAU.3 Unforgeable authentication”, which concentrates on unforgeable  
2209 authentication.

#### 2210 **8.1.5 Element**

2211 The requirements for functional elements are provided in ISO/IEC 15408-2 subclause 6.1.4.

##### 2212 EXAMPLE

2213 An example of an element is “FIA\_UAU.3.2”, which concentrates on the prevention of use of copied authentication  
2214 data.

## 2215 **8.2 Operations**

### 2216 **8.2.1 General**

2217 ISO/IEC 15408-2 and 15408-3 provide catalogues of security components, and this document provides  
2218 authors with the ability to extend the component catalogues in some circumstances. By applying  
2219 operations to these security components, they **may** be tailored precisely to the author’s needs when  
2220 writing PPs, PP-Modules, packages and STs’.

2221 Security components **may** be used precisely as defined in ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3, or  
2222 they **may** be tailored through the use of permitted operations.

2223 When using operations, the author **should** be careful that the dependency needs of other requirements  
 2224 that depend on this requirement are satisfied. The permitted operations are selected from the following  
 2225 set:

- 2226 — Iteration: allows a component to be used more than once with varying operations;
- 2227 — Assignment: allows the specification of parameters;
- 2228 — Selection: allows the specification of one or more items from a list; and
- 2229 — Refinement: allows the addition of details.

2230 The assignment and selection operations are permitted only where specifically indicated in a  
 2231 component. Iteration and refinement are permitted for all security requirements. The operations are  
 2232 described in more detail below.

2233 The ISO/IEC 15408-2:20XX annexes provide the guidance on the valid completion of selections and  
 2234 assignments. This guidance provides normative instructions on how to complete operations, and those  
 2235 instructions **shall** be followed unless the author justifies the deviation:

- 2236 a) “None” is only available as a choice for the completion of a selection if explicitly provided.  
 2237 The lists provided for the completion of selections **shall** be non-empty. If a “None” option is  
 2238 chosen, no additional selection options **may** be chosen. If “None” is not given as an option in a  
 2239 selection, it is permissible to combine the choices in a selection with “and”s and “or”s, unless the  
 2240 selection explicitly states “choose one of”.  
 2241 Selection operations **may** be combined by iteration where needed. In this case, the applicability  
 2242 of the option chosen for each iteration **should** not overlap the subject of the other iterated  
 2243 selection, since they are intended to be exclusive
- 2244 b) For the completion of assignments, the ISO/IEC 15408-2:20XX annexes **shall** be consulted in  
 2245 order to determine when “None” would be a valid completion.

### 2246 8.2.2 The iteration operation

2247 The iteration operation **may** be performed on every component. The author performs an iteration  
 2248 operation by including multiple requirements based on the same component. Each iteration of a  
 2249 component **shall** be different from all other iterations of that component, which is realized by  
 2250 completing assignments and selections in a different way, or by applying refinements to it in a different  
 2251 way.

2252 Different iterations **shall** be uniquely identified to allow clear rationales and tracings to and from these  
 2253 requirements. Iteration identifiers **should** be meaningful to readers.

#### 2254 EXAMPLE

2255 FCS\_COP.1 Cryptographic operation being iterated twice in order to require the implementation of two different  
 2256 cryptographic algorithms. An example of each iteration being uniquely identified is:

- 2257 • Cryptographic operation (RSA signatures) (FCS\_COP.1(RSA signatures))
- 2258 • Cryptographic operation (AES data encryption/decryption) (FCS\_COP.1(AES data  
 2259 encryption/decryption))

2260 NOTE Sometimes an iteration operation **can** be used with components where it is also possible to perform an  
 2261 assignment operation with a range or list of values instead of iterating them. In that case, the author **can** select the  
 2262 most appropriate alternative, considering if there is a necessity of providing a whole rationale for the range of  
 2263 values or if it is necessary to have a separate one for each of them. The author **should** also keep in mind if  
 2264 individual traces are required for those values.

### 2265 8.2.3 The assignment operation

2266 An assignment operation occurs where a given component contains an element with a parameter that  
 2267 **may** be set by the author. The parameter **may** be an unrestricted variable, or a rule that narrows the  
 2268 variable to a specific range of values.

2269 Whenever an element in a PP, PP-Module or package within a PP/PP-Module contains an assignment,  
2270 the author shall do one of four things:

2271 a) leave the assignment uncompleted;

2272 EXAMPLE 1

2273 The author could include FIA\_AFL.1.2 in the PP, PP-Module or package.

2274 “When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met or surpassed, the TSF  
2275 shall [assignment: list of actions].”

2276 In this case, the ST author could complete FIA\_AFL.1.2 thus:

2277 “When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met or surpassed, the TSF  
2278 shall prevent that external entity from binding to any subject in the future.”

2279 b) complete the assignment;

2280 EXAMPLE 2

2281 The author could include FIA\_AFL.1.2 in the PP, PP-Module or package.

2282 “When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met or surpassed, the TSF  
2283 shall prevent that external entity from binding to any subject in the future.”

2284 c) narrow the assignment to further limit the range of values that is allowed;

2285 EXAMPLE 3

2286 The author could include FIA\_AFL.1.1 in the PP, PP-Module or package.

2287 “The TSF shall detect when [assignment: positive integer] unsuccessful authentication attempts occur ...”

2288 In this case, the ST author could complete FIA\_AFL.1.1 thus:

2289 “The TSF shall detect when 3 unsuccessful authentication attempts occur ...”

2290 d) transform the assignment to a selection, thereby narrowing the assignment.

2291 EXAMPLE 4

2292 The author could include FIA\_AFL.1.2 in the PP, PP-Module or package.

2293 “When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met or surpassed, the TSF  
2294 shall [selection: prevent that user from binding to any subject in the future, notify the  
2295 administrator].”

2296 In this case, the ST author could complete FIA\_AFL.1.2 thus:

2297 “When the defined number of unsuccessful authentication attempts has been met or surpassed, the TSF  
2298 shall prevent that user from binding to any subject in the future.”

2299 An ST author shall complete all the assignments.

2300 The values chosen in options b), and c) shall conform to the indicated type required by the assignment.

2301 When an assignment is to be completed with a set, an author should provide a description of the set  
2302 from which the elements of the set may be derived as long as it is clear which subjects are meant.

2303 EXAMPLE 5

2304 Where the set is “subjects”

2305 — all subjects,

2306 — all subjects of type X,

2307 — all subjects except subject a.

## 2308 8.2.4 The selection operation

### 2309 8.2.4.1 General

2310 The selection operation occurs where a given component contains an element where a choice from  
2311 several items has to be made by the author.

2312 Whenever an element in a PP, PP-Module or package contains a selection, the author may do one of  
2313 three things:

2314 a) leave the selection uncompleted,

2315 b) complete the selection by choosing one or more items,

2316 c) restrict the selection by removing some of the choices but leaving two or more.

2317 Whenever an element in a PP, PP-Module or package contains a selection, a ST author **shall** complete  
2318 that selection, as indicated in b) above. Options a) and c) are not allowed for STs.

2319 The item or items chosen in b) and c) **shall** be taken from the items provided in the selection.

#### 2320 8.2.4.2 Selection-based security functional components and SFRs

2321 A PP, PP-Module or package **may** define a set of security functional components and/or SFRs called  
2322 selection-based SFRs. This set of components and/or SFRs is associated with a selection made in  
2323 another component and/or SFRs in the PP, PP-Module or package. The related selection-based  
2324 components and/or SFRs **shall** be included in a PP, PP-Module, package or ST if:

- 2325 — a selection choice identified in the PP, PP-Module or package indicates that it has an associated  
2326 selection-based SFR, and
- 2327 — that selection is made by the author.

2328 The PP, PP-Module or package may be organized so that selection-based components and/or SFRs are  
2329 grouped together.

2330 For the case that an author needs to leave a selection operation uncompleted, the author **shall** leave the  
2331 selection-based components and/or SFRs that are related to the uncompleted selection operation,  
2332 unchanged.

2333 For the case in which the author needs to complete the selection, authors **should** include the  
2334 appropriate selection-based components and/or SFRs in the list of SFRs for the PP, PP-Module, package  
2335 or ST.

2336 For the case in which the selection operation is to be restricted, i.e. some but not all of the selections are  
2337 removed, the author **shall** remove any selection-based components and/or SFRs from the list that  
2338 corresponds to the choices removed from the selection.

#### 2339 EXAMPLE 1

2340 An example of an element with a selection is:

2341 FPT\_TST.1.1 “The TSF **shall** run a suite of self-tests [selection: during initial start-up, periodically during normal  
2342 operation, at the request of the authorized user, at the conditions [assignment: conditions under which self-test  
2343 **should** occur]] to demonstrate the correct operation of...”

2344 The following is another example of such an SFR:

#### 2345 EXAMPLE 2

2346 An example of a selection-based SFR, where FTP\_ITC.1.1 is the SFR with the selection and FCS\_IPSEC.1 is the  
2347 selection-based SFR is:

2348 FTP\_ITC.1.1 The TSF shall be capable of using [selection: IPsec, SSH, TLS, HTTPS] to provide a trusted  
2349 communication channel between...

#### 2350 *Application Note:*

2351 *In the selection for FTP\_ITC.1.1, the ST author selects the mechanism or mechanisms supported by the TOE, and then  
2352 ensures that the selection-based requirements in Appendix B of this PP that correspond to the selected mechanism or  
2353 mechanisms are included in the ST.*

2354 And in Appendix B of the example PP:

2355 The following SFRs are included in the ST if the ST author selects “IPsec” in FTP\_ITC.1.1:

2356 FCS\_IPSEC.1 [...]

#### 2357 8.2.5 The refinement operation

2358 The refinement operation **may** be performed on every requirement. The author performs a refinement  
2359 by altering that requirement.

2360 NOTE A series of refined iteration operations **can** be used to cover all of the subjects, objects, operations,  
2361 security attributes and/or external entities, but where each individual refinement does not.

2362 The first rule for a refinement is that a TOE meeting the refined requirement also meets the unrefined  
2363 requirement in the context of the PP, PP-Module, package or ST, i.e. a refined requirement **shall** be  
2364 “stricter” than the original requirement. If a refinement does not meet this rule, the resulting refined  
2365 requirement is considered to be an extended requirement and **shall** be treated as such in accordance  
2366 with 7.3.

2367 NOTE Refining an audit component with an extra element on prevention of electromagnetic radiation is not  
2368 allowed.

2369 EXAMPLE 2 An example of a valid refinement is:

2370 FIA\_UAU.2.1 “The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-  
2371 mediated actions on behalf of that user.” being refined to “The TSF shall require each user to be successfully  
2372 authenticated by username/password before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.”

2373 The only exception to this rule is that an author **may** refine a SFR to apply to some but not all subjects,  
2374 objects, operations, security attributes and/or external entities. However, this exception does not apply  
2375 to refining SFRs that are taken from PPs, PP-Modules or package to which conformance is being  
2376 claimed; these SFRs **shall** not be refined to apply to fewer subjects, objects, operations, security  
2377 attributes and/or external entities than the SFR in the originating PP, PP-Module or package.

2378 EXAMPLE 3 An example of a such an exception is:

2379 FIA\_UAU.2.1 “The TSF shall require each user to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-  
2380 mediated actions on behalf of that user.” being refined to “The TSF shall require each user originating from the  
2381 internet to be successfully authenticated before allowing any other TSF-mediated actions on behalf of that user.”

2382 The second rule for a refinement is that the refinement **shall** be related to the original component.

2383 A special case of refinement is an editorial refinement, where a small change **may** be made in a  
2384 requirement, i.e. rephrasing a sentence due to adherence to proper English grammar, or to make it  
2385 more understandable to the reader. This change is not allowed to modify the meaning of the  
2386 requirement in any way.

2387 EXAMPLE 4

2388 An example of an editorial refinement is:

2389 The SFR FPT\_FLS.1, “The TSF **shall** continue to preserve a secure state when the following failures occur:  
2390 **breakdown of one CPU**”

2391 could be refined to FPT\_FLS.1, “The TSF **shall** continue to preserve a secure state when the following failure  
2392 occurs: **breakdown of one CPU**”

2393 or even FPT\_FLS.1, “The TSF **shall** continue to preserve a secure state when **one CPU breaks down**”.

### 2394 8.3 Dependencies between components

2395 Dependencies **may** exist between components. Dependencies arise when a component is not self-  
2396 sufficient and relies upon the presence of another component to provide security functionality or  
2397 assurance.

2398 The functional components in ISO/IEC 15408-2 typically have dependencies on other functional  
2399 components. Some of the assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3 also have dependencies, which in  
2400 turn, **may** have dependencies on other ISO/IEC 15408-3 components.

2401 ISO/IEC 15408-2 dependencies on ISO/IEC 15408-3 components **may** also be defined. Extended  
2402 functional/assurance components may define dependencies similarly.

2403 Component dependency descriptions are determined by consulting the component definitions given in  
2404 ISO/IEC 15408-2, ISO/IEC 15408-3, or the extended components definition. In order to ensure  
2405 completeness of the TOE security requirements, dependencies **should** be satisfied when requirements  
2406 based on components with dependencies are incorporated into PPs, PP-Modules, packages or STs.  
2407 Dependencies **should** also be considered when constructing packages.

2408 In other words: if component A has a dependency on component B, this means that whenever a PP, PP-  
 2409 Module, package or ST contains a security requirement based on component A, the PP, PP-Module,  
 2410 package or ST **shall** also contain one of:

- 2411 a) a security requirement based on component B, or
- 2412 b) a security requirement based on a component that is hierarchically higher than B, or
- 2413 c) a justification why the PP, PP-Module, package or ST does not contain a security requirement  
 2414 based on component B.

2415 In cases a) and b), when a security requirement is included because of a dependency, it **may** be  
 2416 necessary to complete operations (assignment, iteration, refinement, selection) on that security  
 2417 requirement in a particular manner to make sure that it actually satisfies the dependency.

2418 In case c), the justification that a security requirement is not included **should** address either:

- 2419 — why the dependency is not necessary or useful, or
- 2420 — that the dependency has been addressed by the operational environment of the TOE, in which  
 2421 case the justification **should** describe how the security objectives for the operational  
 2422 environment address this dependency, or
- 2423 — that the dependency has been addressed by the other SFRs in some other manner (extended  
 2424 SFRs, combinations of SFRs etc.).

## 2425 **8.4 Extended components**

### 2426 **8.4.1 General**

2427 Security requirements **shall** be based on components from ISO/IEC 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3 with  
 2428 three exceptions:

- 2429 a) there are security objectives for the TOE that **cannot** be translated to SFRs using components in  
 2430 ISO/IEC 15408-2,
- 2431 b) a security objective for the TOE that **can** be translated to SFRs, but only with great difficulty  
 2432 and/or complexity based on components in ISO/IEC 15408-2, there are third party  
 2433 requirements that **cannot** be translated to SARs using components in ISO/IEC 15408-3,

2434 EXAMPLE

2435 Laws and/or regulation regarding the evaluation of cryptography.

2436 In these cases, the author is required to define new components called extended components. A  
 2437 precisely defined extended component is needed to provide context and meaning to the extended SFRs  
 2438 and SARs based on that component.

2439 After the new components have been defined correctly, the author **may** then base one or more SFRs or  
 2440 SARs on these newly defined extended components and use them in the same way as the other SFRs  
 2441 and SARs. From this point on, there is no further distinction between SFRs and SARs drawn from  
 2442 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) and SFRs and SARs based on extended components.

2443 Refer to ISO/IEC 15408-3:20XX, Extended components definition (APE\_ECD) and Extended  
 2444 components definition (ASE\_ECD) for further requirements on extended components. Further  
 2445 information on extended components is also given in D.3.6.

### 2446 **8.4.2 Defining extended components**

2447 Whenever an author of a PP, PP-Module, package or ST defines an extended component, this has to be  
 2448 done in a similar manner to the existing ISO/IEC 15408 series components: clear, unambiguous and  
 2449 evaluable (it is possible to systematically demonstrate whether a requirement based on that component  
 2450 holds for a TOE). Extended components **shall** use similar labelling, manner of expression, and level of  
 2451 detail as the existing ISO/IEC 15408 series components.

2452 The author also has to make sure that all applicable dependencies of an extended component are  
2453 included in the definition of that extended component. Examples of possible dependencies are:

- 2454 a) if an extended component refers to auditing, dependencies to components of the FAU: Security  
2455 audit class **may** have to be included;
- 2456 b) if an extended component modifies or accesses data, dependencies to components of the Access  
2457 control policy (FDP\_ACC) family **may** have to be included;
- 2458 c) if an extended component uses a particular design description a dependency to the appropriate  
2459 ADV: Development family **may** have to be included.

2460 In the case of an extended functional component, the author also has to include any applicable audit and  
2461 associated operations information in the definition of that component, similar to existing ISO/IEC  
2462 15408-2 components. In the case of an extended assurance component, the author also has to provide  
2463 suitable evaluation methodology for the component, similar to the method provided in ISO/IEC 18045.

2464 Extended components **may** be placed in existing families, in which case the author has to show how  
2465 these families change. If they do not fit into an existing family, they **shall** be placed in a new family. New  
2466 families have to be defined similarly to those given in ISO/IEC 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3.

2467 New families **may** be placed in existing classes in which case the author has to show how these classes  
2468 change. If they do not fit into an existing class, they **shall** be placed in a new class. New classes have to  
2469 be defined similarly to those defined in ISO/IEC 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3.

## 2470 **9 Packages**

### 2471 **9.1 General**

2472 A package is a named set of security components or security requirements.

2473 A package **may** be defined by any party and is intended to be re-usable. To this goal, it contains  
2474 requirements that are useful and effective in combination.

2475 Where two or more packages are related to each other, they **may** be presented as part of a package  
2476 family, see A.2.

2477 Packages **may** be claimed by PPs, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations and STs, and used to construct larger  
2478 packages. Authors **shall not** rename the claimed or used packages.

2479 NOTE 1 Although no separate criteria are given in ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) for evaluating packages, once  
2480 such packages are included in a PP, PP-Module or ST they will be evaluated using the APE, ACE, or ASE criteria.

2481 NOTE 2 ISO/IEC 15408-5 provides commonly used packages, such as Evaluation Assurance Levels (EAL)  
2482 that have been pre-defined and **can** be used by PP, PP-Modules, PP-Configurations or ST authors.

2483 NOTE 3 In the case of exact conformance, assurance packages cannot be used in the construction of PP-  
2484 Modules.

2485 Further information on packages is given in Annex A.

### 2486 **9.2 Package types**

#### 2487 **9.2.1 General**

2488 A package **shall** be either:

- 2489 — a functional package, containing functional components or requirements, but no assurance  
2490 components or requirements, or
- 2491 — an assurance package, containing assurance components or requirements, but no functional  
2492 components or requirements.

2493 Mixed packages containing both functional and assurance components or requirements **shall not** be  
2494 specified.

2495 All packages **shall** include

- 2496 a) The package identification giving a unique name, short name, version, date, sponsor, and the
- 2497 ISO/IEC 15408 edition;
- 2498 b) The type of the package, either an assurance package or a functional package;
- 2499 c) A package overview giving a narrative description of the purpose of the package;
- 2500 d) Application notes, describing additional information in regard to the package including a
- 2501 reference to any evaluation methods(s) and/or activities specified to be used in conjunction
- 2502 with the package;
- 2503 e) One or more security components or requirements;
- 2504 f) If extended components have been specified then the package includes an extended
- 2505 components definition;
- 2506 g) A component rationale that provides the rationale for selecting the functional or assurance
- 2507 components/requirements included in the package

### 2508 **9.2.2 Assurance packages**

2509 An assurance package contains a set of assurance components or requirements that **may** be drawn from

2510 ISO/IEC 15408-3, **may** be extended assurance components, or that **may** be some combination of both.

2511 An assurance package **shall not** include an SPD or security objectives.

2512 Assurance packages **may** be used within PPs, PP-Configurations and STs and, with the exception of the

2513 exact conformance case, in PP-Modules.

#### 2514 EXAMPLE

2515 The evaluation assurance levels (EALs) that are defined in ISO/IEC 15408-5 are comprised of SARs drawn from

2516 ISO/IEC 15408-3 and comprise a family of security assurance packages.

### 2517 **9.2.3 Functional packages**

2518 A functional package contains a set of functional components or requirements that **may** be drawn from

2519 ISO/IEC 15408-2, or **may** be extended functional components or requirements or some combination of

2520 both.

2521 A functional package **may** include an SPD and security objectives derived from that SPD. If the package

2522 defines an SPD then the functional package security objectives shall be given. The objectives include the

2523 security objectives for the TOE (these are omitted if the Direct Rationale approach is used), security

2524 objectives for the operational environment, and the security objectives rationale.

2525 NOTE When a Direct Rationale approach is used security objectives for the TOE are not included.

2526 Functional packages **may** be used within PPs, PP-Modules and STs as a means to structure security

2527 functionality into building blocks.

2528 Functional packages **may** have dependencies on other functional packages. Such dependencies **shall** be

2529 documented in the functional package and **may** also be documented in a PP, PP-Module or ST.

#### 2530 EXAMPLE

2531 A PP defines and includes functional package A; package A has no dependencies. Functional packages B, C, and D

2532 are defined elsewhere. Package D has no dependencies, but package C depends on package B. A ST can then claim

2533 conformance to the following combinations of PPs and packages:

- 2534 — The ST claims conformance to the PP (which includes functional package A),
- 2535 — The ST claims conformance to the PP and functional package B,
- 2536 — The ST claims conformance to the PP and functional packages B and C,
- 2537 — The ST claims conformance to the PP and functional package D,
- 2538 — The ST claims conformance to the PP and functional packages B, C, and D.

2539 The following would not be allowed:

- 2540 — The ST claims conformance to the PP and functional package C (this is not allowed because package C  
2541 depends on package B, so it cannot be claimed independently.)

### 2542 9.3 Package dependencies

2543 A package may not satisfy all of the dependencies of the components contained within it. However, the  
2544 dependencies shall be met by a PP, PP-Module, PP-Configuration or ST that includes the package. This  
2545 means that it is the responsibility of the author to ensure either that all the dependencies are met or to  
2546 include a rationale that explains why the dependencies are not met. This is explained in 8.3.

### 2547 9.4 Evaluation method(s) and/or activities

2548 Packages may include evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC  
2549 18045. Evaluation methods and/or activities that are associated with the package shall be provided in  
2550 the security requirement section with the relevant security requirement. Application notes, when  
2551 appropriate, should be associated with the specific requirements in the package.

2552 NOTE ISO/IEC 15408-4 provides a framework to perform such derivations.

## 2553 10 Protection Profiles

### 2554 10.1 General

2555 A PP is intended to describe a general TOE type. Therefore, a PP may be used:

- 2556 — as a ST template for any TOEs that meet the PP's TOE type;
- 2557 — as a template for other PPs in order to further refine the TOE type;
- 2558 — as a basis for a PP-Module, in which context it is known as a base PP.

2559 A detailed description of PPs is given in Annex B.

2560 EXAMPLE

2561 A TOE type could be "Firewall";

2562 A refined TOE type could be "Stateful inspection firewalls";

2563 A specific TOE related to that TOE type could be the "MinuteGap Firewall v18.5".

2564 A PP describes the general requirements for a TOE type, and is therefore typically sponsored by:

- 2565 — A technical user community seeking to come to a consensus on the requirements for a given  
2566 TOE type;
- 2567 — A developer of a TOE, or a group of developers of similar TOEs wishing to establish a minimum  
2568 baseline for that type of TOE;
- 2569 — An organization, such as a government or large corporation, specifying its security  
2570 requirements as part of its acquisition process.

2571 NOTE 1 A ST describes requirements for a specific TOE and is typically sponsored by the developer of that TOE.

2572 A PP shall be identified with a reference.

2573 NOTE 2 The reference identifier for a PP must be unique within a catalogue.

### 2574 10.2 Conformance claims and conformance statements

2575 The conformance claims of PPs:

- 2576 a) shall state the **edition of ISO/IEC 15408** to which the PP claims conformance;
- 2577 b) shall describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-2 (security functional requirements) as  
2578 either:

- 2579 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant** - A PP is ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant if all SFRs in that PP  
 2580 are based only upon functional components in the ISO/IEC 15408-2; or
- 2581 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended** - A PP is ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended if at least one SFR in that  
 2582 PP is not based upon functional components in ISO/IEC 15408-2;
- 2583 c) **shall** describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-3 (security assurance requirements) as  
 2584 either:
- 2585 — **ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant** - A PP is ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant if all SARs in that PP  
 2586 are based only upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3; or
- 2587 — **ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended** - A PP is ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended if at least one SAR in that  
 2588 PP is not based upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3;
- 2589 d) **may** include a package conformance claim. More than one package **may** be claimed in a PP.  
 2590 If a package claim is made, it **shall** consist of one of the following statements for each package  
 2591 claim:
- 2592 — **Package name Conformant** - A PP is conformant to a package if:
- 2593 — For functional packages, all constituent parts (SPD, security objectives, and SFRs) of the  
 2594 functional package are present in the corresponding parts of the PP without  
 2595 modification.
- 2596 — For assurance packages, the SARs of that PP are identical to the SARs in the assurance  
 2597 package.
- 2598 — A PP that restricts some selections of SFRs in a package **may** still claim it is package  
 2599 conformant.
- 2600 — **Package name Augmented** - A PP claims an augmentation of a package if:
- 2601 — For functional packages, all constituent parts (SPD, security objectives, and SFRs) of that  
 2602 PP contain all constituent parts given in the functional package but shall have at least  
 2603 one additional SFR or one SFR that is hierarchically higher than an SFR in the functional  
 2604 package.
- 2605 — For assurance packages, the SARs of that PP contain all SARs in the assurance package,  
 2606 but have at least one additional SAR or one SAR that is hierarchically higher than an SAR  
 2607 in the assurance package;
- 2608 — **Package name Tailored** - A PP claims tailoring of a package if:
- 2609 — For functional packages, all constituent parts (SPD, Security Objectives, and SFRs) of  
 2610 that PP contain all constituent parts given in the functional package, but shall have at  
 2611 least one additional SFR; one SFR that is hierarchically higher than an SFR in the  
 2612 functional package; or additional selection items for an SFR with existing selections in  
 2613 the package.
- 2614 — **This claim is not valid for assurance packages;**
- 2615 e) **may** also include a conformance claim with respect to other PPs:
- 2616 — **PP Conformant** - A PP meets other specific PP(s);
- 2617 f) **shall** provide a Conformance Statement: This statement describes the manner in which other  
 2618 PPs or STs shall conform to this PP: The conformance statement shall be one of:
- 2619 — **Exact conformance:** If the PP states that exact conformance is required, a ST **shall** conform  
 2620 to the PP in an exact manner;
- 2621 — **Strict conformance:** If the PP states that strict conformance is required, a PP/ST **shall**  
 2622 conform to the PP in a strict manner;

2623 — **Demonstrable conformance:** If the PP states that demonstrable conformance is required,  
 2624 the PP/ST shall conform to the PP in a strict or demonstrable manner.

2625 NOTE 1 The meaning of exact, strict and demonstrable conformance is the following:

- 2626 • Exact conformance: If the PP states that exact conformance is required, a conformant PP/ST shall  
 2627 contain SPD and objectives identical to the PP's, and the same set of PP's SFRs with all the  
 2628 assignments and selections resolved;
- 2629 • Strict conformance: If the PP states that strict conformance is required, a conformant PP/ST shall  
 2630 contain a superset of PP's SPD, objectives and SFRs, where the new assumptions (if any) do not  
 2631 weaken the PP's SPD, and all the PP's SFRs have their assignments and selections resolved;  
 2632 Strict conformance allows the conformant PP/ST not to add any element to the PP's SPD, set of  
 2633 objectives and SFRs, i.e. the superset defined in the PP/ST may be identical to the PP's, with all  
 2634 the SFRs resolved;
- 2635 • Demonstrable conformance: If the PP states that demonstrable conformance is required, a  
 2636 conformant PP/ST shall contain a SPD, set of objectives and set of SFRs that are equivalent to a  
 2637 superset of PP's SPD, objectives and SFRs, where the new assumptions (if any) do not weaken the  
 2638 PP's SPD, and where the set of the conformant PP/ST SFRs imply the PP's SFRs;  
 2639 Demonstrable conformance allows the conformant PP/ST to use different but equivalent  
 2640 statements, and it allows as well to simply define a superset as in the strict conformance case,  
 2641 without changing the statements given in the PP.

2642 NOTE 2 In other words, a PP/ST is only allowed to conform to a PP in a demonstrable manner if the PP  
 2643 explicitly allows this.

2644 NOTE 3 PP-Modules and PP-Configurations cannot claim conformance to a PP. For more information,  
 2645 see clauses 11.2 and 11.3 .

2646 g) **may** also include a reference to any evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived  
 2647 from ISO/IEC 18045.

2648 — If evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC 18045 are  
 2649 associated with the PP, then the Conformance Statement shall also include a statement in  
 2650 the following form:

2651 *"This PP requires the use of evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities defined in*  
 2652 *<reference>."*

2653 In this statement, <reference> is replaced by the identification of the location of the relevant  
 2654 evaluation methods and evaluation activities. This reference may be to the PP itself, or to  
 2655 one or more separate documents.

2656 NOTE 4 Either a PP/ST conforms to a PP or it does not. ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not recognize "partial"  
 2657 conformance. It is therefore the responsibility of the PP author to ensure the PP is not overly onerous, prohibiting  
 2658 PP/ST authors from claiming conformance to the PP. For more information on the conformance statements and  
 2659 claims for PPs, see Annex B.

### 2660 10.2.1 Assurance requirements

2661 A PP which complies with ISO/IEC 15408-3 (possibly extended) shall define the set of SARs that applies  
 2662 to the entire TOE.

2663 A PP may define a distinctive name for the set of SARs that are applicable. However, if the set of SARs is  
 2664 an (augmented) predefined EAL (EAL1 to EAL7) or an (augmented) assurance package defined in an  
 2665 applicable external reference, then the same name shall be used.

## 2666 10.3 Additional requirements common to strict and demonstrable conformance

### 2667 10.3.1 Conformance claims and conformance statements

2668 If a PP/ST claims either strict or demonstrable conformance to multiple PPs, it shall conform to each PP  
 2669 in the manner stated by that PP; that is, either strictly or demonstrably. This means that the PP/ST may  
 2670 conform strictly to some PPs and demonstrably to other PPs.

2671 A PP/ST conforms to a PP if the PP/ST is equivalent or more restrictive than this PP, that is, if:

- 2672 — all TOEs that meet the PP/ST also meet the PP, and
- 2673 — all operational environments that meet the PP also meet the PP/ST.

2674 In other words, the PP/ST **shall** levy the same or more, requirements on the TOE and the same or less  
2675 conditions on the operational environment of the TOE.

2676 This general statement holds for the different constructs of the PP/ST, namely the Security Problem  
2677 Definition, the security objectives for the TOE, the security objectives for the Environment, and the  
2678 security functional and security assurance requirements.

### 2679 **10.3.2 Security problem definition**

2680 The conformance rationale in the PP/ST **shall** demonstrate that the SPD in the PP/ST is equivalent or  
2681 more restrictive than the SPD in the PP. This means that:

- 2682 — all TOEs that meet the SPD in the PP/ST also meet the SPD in the PP;
- 2683 — all operational environments that meet the SPD in the PP also meet the SPD in the PP/ST.

### 2684 **10.3.3 Security objectives**

2685 The conformance rationale in the PP/ST **shall** demonstrate that the security objectives in the PP/ST are  
2686 equivalent or more restrictive than the security objectives in the PP. This means that:

- 2687 — all TOEs that meet the security objectives for the TOE in the PP/ST also meet the security  
2688 objectives for the TOE in the PP;
- 2689 — all operational environments that meet the security objectives for the operational environment  
2690 in the PP also meet the security objectives for the operational environment in the PP/ST.

## 2691 **10.4 Additional requirements specific to strict conformance**

### 2692 **10.4.1 Requirements for the security problem definition**

2693 The PP/ST **shall** contain the SPD of the PP and **may** specify additional threats and OSPs; it **shall**  
2694 contain all assumptions as defined in the PP, with two possible exceptions as explained in the next  
2695 two bullets;

- 2696 — an assumption (or a part of an assumption) specified in the PP **may** be omitted from the PP/ST if  
2697 all security objectives for the operational environment defined in the PP addressing this  
2698 assumption (or this part of an assumption) are replaced by security objectives for the TOE in  
2699 the PP/ST;
- 2700 — a new assumption **may** be added in the PP/ST to the set of assumptions defined in the PP, if this  
2701 new assumption does not mitigate a threat (or part of a threat) meant to be addressed by  
2702 security objectives for the TOE in the PP and if this assumption doesn't fulfil an OSP (or a part of  
2703 an OSP) meant to be addressed by security objectives for the TOE in the PP.

### 2704 **10.4.2 Requirements for the security objectives**

2705 The PP/ST:

- 2706 — **shall** contain all security objectives for the TOE of the PP but **may** specify additional security  
2707 objectives for the TOE;
- 2708 — **shall** contain all security objectives for the operational environment as defined in the PP with  
2709 two exceptions as explained in the next two bullet points;
- 2710 — **may** specify that certain security objectives for the operational environment in the PP are  
2711 security objectives for the TOE in the PP/ST. This is called re-assigning a security objective. If a  
2712 security objective is re-assigned to the security objectives for the TOE the security objectives

2713 justification has to make clear which assumption or part of the assumption **may** not be  
 2714 necessary anymore;

2715 — **may** specify additional security objectives for the operational environment, if these new  
 2716 objectives do not mitigate a threat (or part of a threat) meant to be addressed by security  
 2717 objectives of the TOE in the PP and if these new objectives do not fulfil an OSP (or a part of an  
 2718 OSP) meant to be addressed by security objectives of the TOE in the PP.

### 2719 10.4.3 Requirements for the security requirements

2720 The PP/ST:

2721 — **shall** contain all SFRs and SARs in the PP;

2722 — **may** claim additional or hierarchically stronger SFRs and SARs. The completion of operations in  
 2723 the ST **shall** be internally consistent with that in the PP; either the same completion will be used  
 2724 in the PP/ST as that in the PP or one that makes the requirement more restrictive.

2725 NOTE the rules of refinement apply.

### 2726 10.5 Additional requirements specific to demonstrable conformance

2727 Demonstrable conformance allows a PP author to describe a common security problem to be solved and  
 2728 provide generic guidelines to the requirements necessary for its resolution, in the knowledge that there  
 2729 is likely to be more than one way of specifying a resolution.

2730 The PP/ST **shall** contain a rationale on why the PP/ST is considered to be “equivalent or more  
 2731 restrictive” than the PP.

### 2732 10.6 Additional requirements specific to exact conformance

#### 2733 10.6.1 General

2734 Exact conformance is used when a PP author needs to control what a ST **may** claim conformance to with  
 2735 respect to the PP that they have written. It is used in cases where the PP author requires that STs which  
 2736 claim conformance to the PP do not include additional SPD, security objectives or requirements that  
 2737 have not been considered by the PP author.

2738 A PP that requires exact conformance in its conformance statement **may** define optional SFRs and any  
 2739 SPD-elements that are required to support these SFRs. A ST (or PP-Module) **may** then include these  
 2740 optional SFRs (and any required SPD elements) in its set of requirements while maintaining its exact  
 2741 conformance claim.

2742 A PP with exact conformance type **shall not** claim conformance to any other PPs of any conformance  
 2743 type. A PP with exact conformance type **shall not** be included in a PP-Configuration which also includes  
 2744 PPs or PP-Modules with strict or demonstrable conformance type.

2745 NOTE 1 This is because, it is impossible to claim conformance to both a strict/demonstrable conformance PP  
 2746 and an exact conformance PP, since it would mean adding requirements or SPD-elements to the exact  
 2747 conformance PP, which explicitly prohibits this operation.

2748 In the “simple” case where a ST claims exact conformance to a PP, there is no ambiguity whether the ST  
 2749 is exactly conformant or not because the correspondence between the SPD, security objectives, SFRs,  
 2750 and SARs is demonstrated during evaluation without the need to seek PP author input.

2751 However, other cases are allowed where multiple sets of SPD-elements, security objectives, and SFRs  
 2752 **may** be combined, these cases require mechanisms that preserve the ability of the exact conformance  
 2753 PP authors to control a conformance claim against their PP. These mechanisms are described in the  
 2754 following subclauses.

2755 EXAMPLE

2756 A complex case might be if a PP-Module aims to use a PP as its base PP, or if a ST claims conformance to two PPs.

2757 NOTE 2 If a PP requires exact conformance, then only those SFRs and SARs specified by that PP are allowed in  
 2758 the conformant ST. These security requirements are related to the SPD and security objectives specified in the PP,  
 2759 which are also included in the conformant ST.

## 2760 10.6.2 Conformance claims and statements

2761 If a PP requires exact conformance in its conformance statement then

- 2762 a) the PP **shall** state which other PPs and PP-Modules are allowed to be combined with that PP,  
 2763 specifying which of these are allowed to be claimed in conjunction with the PP by a ST or used  
 2764 together in a PP-Configuration;
- 2765 b) all the additional PPs to which a ST **may** claim exact conformance **shall** also have an exact  
 2766 conformance requirement; and
- 2767 c) all of the additional PPs shall identify the PP in their respective conformance statements.
- 2768 d) all of the additional PP-Modules claimed through a PP-Configuration shall identify the PP in  
 2769 their respective conformance statements.

2770 NOTE A PP-Module does not have to identify its own base PPs/PP-Module(s) in its conformance  
 2771 statement; the base PPs/PP-Modules are identified elsewhere in the PP-Module and thus are implicitly  
 2772 allowed to be used with the PP-Module.

## 2773 10.7 Using PPs

2774 If a PP/ST claims to be conformant to one or more PPs and possibly one or more packages, the  
 2775 evaluation of that PP/ST will include a demonstration that the PP/ST actually conforms to the claimed  
 2776 PPs and/or packages. Details of this determination of conformance is found in Annex A and Annex B.

2777 This allows the following process:

- 2778 a) An organization seeking to acquire a particular type of IT security product develops their  
 2779 security needs into a PP, then has this PP evaluated and publishes it;
- 2780 b) A developer takes this PP, writes a ST that claims conformance to the PP and has this ST  
 2781 evaluated;
- 2782 c) The developer then builds a TOE (or uses an existing one) and has this evaluated against the ST.

2783 The result is that the evaluated TOE meets the requirements of the organization as defined in the PP  
 2784 and that the organization **can** therefore have confidence that the TOE meets their security needs. A  
 2785 similar line of reasoning applies to packages.

## 2786 10.8 Conformance statements and claims in the case of multiple PPs

### 2787 10.8.1 General

2788 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) allows both STs and PPs to claim conformance to multiple PPs. The case for a  
 2789 ST claiming conformance to multiple PPs is covered in 11.3.3. Subclause, 10.8, covers the case where a  
 2790 PP claims conformance to multiple PPs.

### 2791 10.8.2 Where strict or demonstrable conformance is specified

2792 Allowing a PP to claim conformance to multiple PPs permits chains of PPs to be constructed, each PP in  
 2793 the chain is based on the previous PP(s).

#### 2794 EXAMPLE

2795 PPs for an Integrated Circuit and for a Smart Card OS, can be used to construct a Smart Card PP (IC and OS) that  
 2796 claims conformance to both. In turn, this Smart Card PP could be used to develop specific PPs for different use  
 2797 cases, e.g. tachograph card, payment card, electronic passport, etc. A developer could then construct a ST  
 2798 conformant to any of those PPs.

### 2799 10.8.3 Where exact conformance is specified

2800 A PP **shall not** claim exact conformance to another PP or combination of PPs.

2801 NOTE 1 In cases where such a combination of functionality is needed, this may be achieved by creating  
2802 PP-Configurations, where PP-Modules are used to specify additional functionality to one or more base  
2803 PPs.

## 2804 11 Modular Requirements Construction

### 2805 11.1 General

2806 In order to allow a modular description of the TOE's security features, STs can claim conformance to a  
2807 PP-Configuration instead of PPs. Such PP-Configurations, are built out of PPs, PP-Modules and base  
2808 PPs/PP-Modules.

2809 PP-Configurations can be constructed to accommodate either a "single-assurance" evaluation approach  
2810 or a "multi-assurance" evaluation approach. In a single-assurance evaluation approach, a single set of  
2811 assurance requirements applies to all components of the PP-Configuration. In a multi-assurance  
2812 evaluation approach, there is a single global set of assurance requirements that applies to all  
2813 components of the PP-Configuration, but additionally each component (PP-Module, PP) has its own set  
2814 of assurance requirements to which it is subject. The multi-assurance approach is not allowed for  
2815 components that require exact conformance. The following sections present the content-related details  
2816 for these two evaluation approaches; the actual evaluation particulars using these approaches is  
2817 discussed in Clause 13.

2818 **Editor's note: The fact that multi-assurance cannot be used with exact conformance PP-configurations**  
2819 **is not part of the definition of the multi-assurance approach. The restriction could be relaxed.**

### 2820 11.2 PP-Modules

#### 2821 11.2.1 General

2822 A PP-Module is an internally consistent set of SPD-elements, security objectives for the TOE and the  
2823 operational environment, and security functional requirements, defined in the context of one or more  
2824 PPs and possibly other PP-Modules.

2825 Unlike PPs, PP-Modules address those security features of a given TOE type that **cannot** be required  
2826 uniformly for all products of this TOE type.

2827 Unlike PPs, PP-Modules can be used only in PP-Configurations. A PP/ST cannot claim conformance with  
2828 a PP-Module directly.

#### 2829 EXAMPLE

2830 Examples of features that cannot be required uniformly for all products within a TOE type are authentication  
2831 using biometrics, Bluetooth security functions, and Wireless Local Area Network clients.

#### 2832 11.2.2 Base PP/PP-Module

2833 For a given PP-Module, a base PP/PP-Module is a PP/PP-Module that is required anytime the given PP-  
2834 Module is used in a PP-Configuration. See Clause 10 and Annex B.

2835 NOTE 1 In the exact conformance case, a base PP is a PP that has been written with a goal of being used in a PP-  
2836 Configuration in association with PP-Modules and is allowed to.

2837 NOTE 2 In the demonstrable/strict conformance case, any PP/PP-Module may become the basis of another PP-  
2838 Module.

#### 2839 11.2.3 Requirements for PP-Modules

##### 2840 11.2.3.1 General

2841 A PP-Module **shall** be identified with a reference identifier.

2842 NOTE 1 The reference identifier for a PP-Module must be unique within a catalogue.

2843 A PP-Module **shall** refer to a set of one or more base PPs/PP-Modules, which are required to be used  
2844 with the PP-Module. A PP-Module may refer to one or more base PP-Modules, provided the base PPs of

2845 all the PP-Modules are also required. A PP-Module **may** refer to alternative sets of base PPs/PP-  
2846 Modules.

2847 A PP-Module **shall** specify the TOE type and **shall** specify additional security functional requirements. A  
2848 PP-Module **may** introduce new SPD-elements and objectives and **may** also refine or interpret some of  
2849 the SPD-elements of its base PP/PP-Modules.

2850 NOTE 2 The TOE type defined in the PP-Module may supplement the TOE type defined in its base PPs/PP-  
2851 Modules.

2852 A PP-Module **shall** provide a **consistency rationale** ensuring that the union of the elements defined in  
2853 the PP-Module and in its base PPs/PP-Modules do not lead to contradiction.

2854 NOTE 2 In a Direct Rationale PP-Module, security objectives for the TOE are not included.

2855 NOTE 3 The evaluation of a PP-Module alone is meaningless. A PP-Module has to be evaluated as part of a PP-  
2856 Configuration, at least with its base PPs/PP-Modules.

2857 Further information on PP-Modules is given in C.1.

2858 A PP-Module **may** complete and/or refine the SPD-elements and security objectives of the base PPs/PP-  
2859 Modules and shall define a non-empty set of SFRs that are refinement of the SFRs of the base PPs/PP-  
2860 Modules or new.

2861 A ST that claims conformance to a PP-Configuration including the PP-Module **shall** then include the PP-  
2862 Module SPD-elements, security objectives and SFRs, combined with those of the base PPs/PP-Modules.

### 2863 11.2.3.2 Direct Rationale

2864 A PP-Module **may** use the Direct Rationale approach, provided that its base PPs/PP-Modules also use  
2865 the Direct Rationale approach.

### 2866 11.2.3.3 Conformance type, conformance claims and conformance statements

2867 The conformance claims of a PP-Module:

2868 a) **shall** state the **edition of ISO/IEC 15408** to which the PP-Module claims conformance;

2869 b) **shall** describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-2 as either:

2870 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant** - A PP-Module is ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant if all SFRs in  
2871 that PP-Module are based only upon functional components in the ISO/IEC 15408-2; or

2872 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended** - A PP-Module is ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended if at least one SFR  
2873 in that PP-Module is not based upon functional components in ISO/IEC 15408-2;

2874 c) **may** include a conformance claim made with respect to functional packages. More than one  
2875 functional package **may** be claimed by a PP-Module.

2876 If a package claim is made, it **shall** consist of one of the following claims for each package:

2877 — **Package Name Conformant** - PP-Module is conformant to a package if:

2878 — all constituent parts of the functional package, including the SPD, security objectives,  
2879 and SFRs, of that functional package are present in the corresponding parts of the PP-  
2880 Module without modification;

2881 — **Package Name Augmented** - A PP-Module claims an augmentation of a package if:

2882 — all constituent parts of the functional package, including the SPD, security objectives,  
2883 and SFRs, contained in the PP-Module are identical to those given in the functional  
2884 package, but **shall** also contain at least one SFR that is either additional or hierarchically  
2885 higher than those SFRs contained in the package;

2886 NOTE 1 A PP-Module does not claim conformance to a functional package that one of its base PPs  
2887 claims conformance to. The exception to this rule is when the PP-Module augments the functional  
2888 package as it is instantiated in the base PPs/PP-Modules; in this case the PP-Module would claim the  
2889 functional package as "Package Name Augmented" in its package conformance claim statement.

- 2890 — **Package name Tailored** - A PP-Module claims tailoring of a package if:
- 2891 — all constituent parts of the functional package, including the SPD, Security Objectives,  
2892 and SFRs, contained in the PP-Module are identical to those given in the functional  
2893 package, but shall have at least one additional SFR; one SFR that is hierarchically higher  
2894 than an SFR in the functional package; or additional selection items for an SFR with  
2895 existing selections in the package;
- 2896 d) In the case of strict and demonstrable conformance,
- 2897 — shall describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-3 as either:
- 2898 — ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant - A PP is ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant if all SARs in that  
2899 PP are based only upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3; or
- 2900 — ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended - A PP is ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended if at least one SAR in  
2901 that PP is not based upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3;
- 2902 — may include a conformance claim made with respect to assurance packages. More than one  
2903 assurance package may be claimed by a PP-Module. If a package claim is made, it shall  
2904 consist of one of the following claims for each package:
- 2905 — **Package Name Conformant** - PP-Module is conformant to an assurance package if:
- 2906 — all constituent parts of the assurance package are present in the PP-Module without  
2907 modification;
- 2908 — **Package Name Augmented** - A PP-Module claims an augmentation of an assurance  
2909 package if:
- 2910 — all constituent parts of the assurance package contained in the PP-Module are identical  
2911 to those given in the assurance package, but shall also contain at least one SAR that is  
2912 either additional or hierarchically higher than those SARs contained in the package;
- 2913 e) In the case of exact conformance:
- 2914 — the Conformance Statement shall state which other PPs and PP-Modules (which are not in  
2915 the set of base PPs/PP-Modules) are allowed to be used in a PP-Configuration with that PP-  
2916 Module;
- 2917 — the base PPs/PP-Modules for the PP-Module and all of the additional PPs and PP-Modules  
2918 shall identify the PP-Module in their respective conformance statements.
- 2919 NOTE 2 Base PPs/PP-Modules do not need to be specified in the PP-Modules' conformance statement.
- 2920 h) shall provide a Conformance Statement: This statement describes the manner in which STs shall  
2921 conform to this PP-Module as part of a PP-Configuration: The conformance statement shall be  
2922 one of:
- 2923 — **Exact conformance:** The PP-Module shall require exact conformance if and only if all its  
2924 base PPs/PP-Modules are of exact conformance. A ST shall conform to the PP-Module, as  
2925 part of a PP-Configuration, in an exact manner;
- 2926 — **Strict conformance:** If the PP-Module states that strict conformance is required, a ST shall  
2927 conform to the PP-Module in a strict manner;
- 2928 — **Demonstrable conformance:** If the PP-Module states that demonstrable conformance is  
2929 required, the ST shall conform to the PP-Module in a strict or demonstrable manner.
- 2930 NOTE 1 In the case of exact conformance, all of the referenced base PPs/PP-Modules shall also require  
2931 exact conformance.
- 2932 NOTE 2 A PP-Module can require strict or demonstrable conformance although its base PPs/PP-  
2933 Modules do not all require strict or demonstrable conformance. The combination of demonstrable and  
2934 strict conformance shall be validated in the PP-Configuration evaluation.

2935 NOTE 3 The explicit declaration of strict or demonstrable conformance allows sponsors to make the  
2936 most appropriate statement in each PP-Module, independently of its base PPs/PP-Modules.

2937 NOTE 4 A ST is only allowed to conform to a PP-Module in a demonstrable manner if the PP-Module  
2938 explicitly allows this.

- 2939 f) **may** also include a reference to any evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived  
2940 from ISO/IEC 18045.

2941 — If evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC 18045 are  
2942 associated with the PP-Module, then the Conformance Statement shall also include a  
2943 statement in the following form:

2944 *“This PP-Module requires the use of evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities defined in  
2945 <reference>.”*

2946 In this statement, <reference> is replaced by the identification of the location of the relevant  
2947 evaluation methods and evaluation activities. This reference may be to the PP-Module itself,  
2948 or to one or more separate documents.

2949 For more information on the conformance types, claims and statements for PP-Modules, see Annex C.

#### 2950 11.2.3.4 Assurance requirements

2951 A PP-Module of demonstrable or strict conformance **shall** define the set of SARs that applies to the TSF  
2952 defined in the PP-Module, which can be either inherited from the base PPs/PP-Modules or explicitly  
2953 declared by the PP-Module author.

2954 A PP-Module **may** define a distinctive name for its set of SARs. However, if the PP-Module declares an  
2955 (augmented) predefined EAL (EAL1 to EAL7) or an (augmented) assurance package defined in an  
2956 applicable external reference or inherits the set of SARs from its base PPs/PP-Modules, then the same  
2957 name **shall** be used.

2958 A PP-Module of demonstrable or strict conformance shall provide an **assurance rationale** that justifies  
2959 the internal consistency of its set of SARs, that is:

- 2960 — the consistency of the set of SARs with regard to the threat model as defined in the SPD of the  
2961 PP-Module,
- 2962 — if the PP-Module does not inherit its set of SARs from its base PPs/PP-Modules, the consistency  
2963 of the set of SARs with all the sets of SARs defined in the base PPs/PP-Modules of the PP-  
2964 Module.

2965 NOTE 1 Consistency refers to the absence of contradiction. An example of an inconsistency between SARs and  
2966 SPD would be to consider highly skilled threat agents together with a low AVA\_VAN level that cannot consider  
2967 these threat agents by definition.

2968 NOTE 2 The PP-Module assurance rationale ensures that the set of SARs defined in the PP-Module does not  
2969 undermine the security that is expected for the assets that are shared between the PP-Module and its base  
2970 PPs/PP-Modules (if shared assets exist).

2971 NOTE 3 The assurance rationale at PP-Module level contributes but is not sufficient to ensure the consistency  
2972 of the assurance requirements at PP-Configuration level. See clause 11.3.2.4.

2973 NOTE 4 The assurance rationale may rely on the relationship of the set of SARs in the PP-Module with the  
2974 predefined EALs to demonstrate the internal consistency.

2975 A PP-Module of exact conformance type does not have a set of SARs explicitly associated with it; it  
2976 “inherits” the SARs of its base PP(s). If the PP-Module specifies a set of base PPs, the base PPs must  
2977 have identical SARs.

### 2978 11.3 PP-Configurations

#### 2979 11.3.1 General

2980 A PP-Configuration is a set of meta-data giving the specification for the construction of a set of  
2981 requirements—to which conformance can be claimed.

2982 A PP-Configuration is intended to describe a general TOE type. A PP-Configuration:

- 2983 — **may** be used as a ST template for any TOEs that meet the PP-Configuration's TOE type;
- 2984 — **cannot** be used as a template for other PP-Configurations, PPs or PP-Modules.

2985 A PP-Configuration contains a set of PPs and PP-Modules (the PP-Configuration components) and  
 2986 cannot not claim conformance to any functional packages, except indirectly through its PPs/PP-  
 2987 Modules. PP-Configurations may contain SARs and claim conformance to assurance packages.

2988 Two types of PP-Configurations are identified, each has different requirements for their construction  
 2989 and are applicable depending on the needs of the consumer (risk owner). These are:

- 2990 — *Single Assurance PP-Configuration*: This describes a configuration type in which all the SARs in  
 2991 the PP-Configuration components are identical. Conformance types of the PPs/PP-Modules **may**  
 2992 be exact, strict or demonstrable.
- 2993 — *Multi Assurance PP-Configuration*: This describes a configuration type in which the SARs in the  
 2994 PP-Configuration components **may** not be identical. Conformance types of the PPs/PP-Modules  
 2995 **may** be strict or demonstrable.

2996 **11.3.2 Requirements for PP-Configurations**

2997 **11.3.2.1 General**

2998 A PP-Configuration **shall** be identified with a reference.

2999 NOTE 1 The reference identifier for a PP-Configuration **must** be unique within a catalogue.

3000 A PP-Configuration **shall** define the PP-Configuration **components list** that uniquely identifies all the  
 3001 PPs and PP-Modules that compose, by reference, the PP-Configuration. A PP-Configuration **shall** contain  
 3002 one PP and at least another component. It **may** contain a PP-Module provided its set of base PPs/PP-  
 3003 Modules are also included in the PP-Configuration. It **may** contain PPs that have no associated PP-  
 3004 Module.

3005 A PP-Configuration **shall** define the **TOE type** to which it applies.

3006 A PP-Configuration contains exactly, by reference, the SPD, security objectives, SFRs, and functional  
 3007 packages defined in its PPs/PP-Modules; the specification of any additional element **shall** be done in  
 3008 one of its PPs/PP-Modules.

3009 A PP-Configuration **shall** provide a **consistency rationale** ensuring that the union of the elements  
 3010 defined in its components do not lead to contradiction.

3011 A multi-assurance PP-Configuration **shall** describe the organization of the TSF in terms of the sub-TSFs  
 3012 that are defined in its PPs/PP-Modules and **shall** define for each sub-TSF a set of SARs that is consistent  
 3013 with the corresponding PP/PP-Module.

3014 NOTE 2 In the case of a multi-assurance PP-Configuration containing one PP and one PP-Module with different  
 3015 sets of SARs, the TSF organization is the following: the TSF is the union of the SFRs defined in the PP and in the PP-  
 3016 Module, and there are two sub-TSFs, which consist of the PP's TSF and the PP-Module's TSF. The same  
 3017 organization holds for a PP-Configuration composed of two PPs, which define the two sub-TSFs.

3018 NOTE 3 The sub-TSFs contained in a multi-assurance PP-Configuration may have some overlap. This does not  
 3019 impact on the applicable assurance requirements: Each sub-TSF shall be evaluated against its own set of SARs.  
 3020 This means that the overlapping parts may be evaluated against multiple sets of assurance requirements.

3021 A PP-Configuration:

- 3022 — **may** be used in context with the Direct Rationale approach described in B.5 and C.2.4. In this  
 3023 case, all of the components of the PP-Configuration **shall** also use the Direct Rationale approach;
- 3024 — **shall not** contain any additional content beyond that described in this document.

3025 NOTE 4 An instantiated PP-Configuration is analogous to a PP that includes all the elements from the PPs and  
 3026 the PP-Modules it contains.

3027 **11.3.2.2 Components statement**

3028 A PP-Configuration

3029 – shall identify all the components of the PP-Configuration in a components statement. The  
 3030 components statement shall contain two or more PP or PP-Modules, at least one of which shall  
 3031 be a PP.

3032 NOTE 1 These components include all the base PPs/PP-Modules required by the PP-Modules.

3033 NOTE 2 The components statement is further described in C.3.1.3.

3034 – shall not claim conformance to another PP-Configuration

3035 NOTE 3 If this is desired, the effect can be achieved by directly including all components from both PP-  
 3036 Configurations in one new defined PP-Configuration, where exact conformance can be checked and  
 3037 maintained.

3038 – shall include the base PPs/PP-Modules of all the PP-Modules included in the PP-Configuration. If  
 3039 a PP-Module defines alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules then only one of these sets shall  
 3040 be used in a PP-Configuration;

3041 – may select more PPs than the base PPs/PP-Modules of the PP-Modules;

3042 – for PP-Configurations using the single-assurance evaluation approach, may identify the sub-TSF  
 3043 that corresponds to each component defined by the PP-Configuration;

3044 – for PP-Configurations using the multi-assurance evaluation approach, shall identify the sub-TSF  
 3045 that corresponds to each component defined by the PP-Configuration.

3046 For an exact PP-Configuration, all PP-Configuration components shall allow each other to be allowed to  
 3047 be used together in their respective conformance statements.

3048 NOTE 4 This is implicit for the base PPs/PP-Modules of a PP-Module. In all other cases, this allowance must be  
 3049 explicitly stated.

3050 **11.3.2.3 Conformance claims and conformance statement**

3051 The conformance claims of a PP-Configuration

3052 a) shall state the **edition of ISO/IEC 15408** to which the PP claims conformance.

3053 b) shall describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-2 (security functional requirements) as  
 3054 either:

3055 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant** - A PP-Configuration is ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant if all  
 3056 the PPs and PP-Modules in the PP-Configuration are ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant; or

3057 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended** - A PP-Configuration is ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended if at least  
 3058 one PP or PP-Module is not based upon functional components in ISO/IEC 15408-2;

3059 c) shall describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-3 (security assurance requirements) as  
 3060 either:

3061 — **ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant** - A PP-Configuration is ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant if all  
 3062 SARs in that PP-Configuration, which may be simply inherited from its components, are  
 3063 based only upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3; or

3064 — **ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended** - A PP-Configuration is ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended if at least  
 3065 one SAR in that PP-Configuration, which may be simply inherited from its components, is  
 3066 not based upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3;

3067 d) may include an assurance package conformance claim. More than one package may be claimed  
 3068 in a PP-Configuration. If an assurance package claim is made, it shall consist of one of the  
 3069 following statements for each package claim:

3070 — **Package name Conformant** - A PP-Configuration is conformant to an assurance package if:

- 3071 — The SARs of that PP-Configuration, which may be inherited from its components, are  
3072 identical to the SARs in the assurance package.
- 3073 — **Package name Augmented** - A PP-Configuration claims an augmentation of an assurance  
3074 package if:
- 3075 — The SARs of that PP-Configuration, which may be inherited from its components,  
3076 contain all SARs in the assurance package, but have at least one additional SAR or one  
3077 SAR that is hierarchically higher than an SAR in the assurance package;
- 3078 e) **shall not** include a functional package conformance claim. Functional packages may be claimed  
3079 by the components of the PP-Configuration;
- 3080 f) **shall not** include a conformance claim with respect to other PP-Configurations, PPs or PP-  
3081 Modules;
- 3082 g) **shall provide** a Conformance Statement. This statement describes the manner in which STs shall  
3083 conform to this PP-Configuration:
- 3084 — For a PP-Configuration where all its PPs and PP-Modules are of the same conformance type,  
3085 the conformance statement **shall** provide a single conformance type, that is one of:
- 3086 — **Exact conformance:** If the PP-Configuration states that exact conformance is  
3087 required, a ST shall conform to the PP-Configuration in an exact manner.
- 3088 — **Strict conformance:** If the PP-Configuration states that strict conformance is  
3089 required, a ST shall conform to the PP-Configuration in a strict manner.
- 3090 — **Demonstrable conformance:** If the PP-Configuration states that demonstrable  
3091 conformance is required, a ST shall conform to the PP-Configuration in a strict or  
3092 demonstrable manner.
- 3093 — For a PP-Configuration where the PPs and PP-Modules do not require all the same  
3094 conformance type, the conformance statement **shall** provide the **list of the conformance**  
3095 **types** that are required by each of the PPs and PP-Modules composing the PP-Configuration.  
3096 A ST shall conform to the PP-Configuration by conforming to each of the PPs and PP-  
3097 Modules in the manner they require.
- 3098 NOTE 1 This applies only to strict and demonstrable conformance, since the combination of exact  
3099 conformance with other types of conformance is not allowed in a PP-Configuration.
- 3100 NOTE 2 The compatibility of the multiple conformance **shall** be validated in the ST evaluation, in  
3101 the same manner as when a ST claims conformance to several PPs that require different  
3102 conformance.
- 3103 g) **may** also include a reference to any evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived  
3104 from ISO/IEC 18045.
- 3105 — If evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC 18045 are  
3106 associated with the PP-Configuration, then the Conformance Statement shall also include a  
3107 statement in the following form:
- 3108 *“This PP-Configuration requires the use of evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities*  
3109 *defined in <reference>.”*
- 3110 In this statement, <reference> is replaced by the identification of the location of the relevant  
3111 evaluation methods and evaluation activities. This reference may be to the PP-Configuration  
3112 itself, or to one or more separate documents.
- 3113 NOTE 3 There are implications for conformance statements in PP-Modules in the exact conformance case that  
3114 are covered in C.2.2.5.
- 3115 NOTE 4 Guidance on the conformance statement is given in B.3.3.

3116 **11.3.2.4 Assurance requirements**

3117 A PP-Configuration shall provide a **SAR statement** where the applicable assurance requirements and  
3118 associated rationale are defined.

3119 A PP-Configuration intending to be used in the single-assurance evaluation approach shall define a  
3120 single set of SARs for all the components in the PP-Configuration. This set of SARs identified shall be  
3121 identical to or augment those declared in the individual PP-Configuration components.

3122 A PP-Configuration intending to be used in the multi-assurance evaluation approach (meaning that it  
3123 consists of demonstrable and/or strict conformance components only) shall define:

- 3124 — The global set of SARs that applies to the entire TOE. This may be an (augmented) predefined  
3125 EAL (EAL1 to EAL7) or an (augmented) assurance package defined in an applicable external  
3126 reference or a set of SARs that is defined within the PP-Configuration itself.
- 3127 — For each sub-TSF, the set of SARs that applies. This may be the same set of SARs inherited from  
3128 the PP or PP-Module defining the sub-TSF, or a larger set (augmentation) which requires the  
3129 update of the SAR rationale provided in the PP/PP-Module.

3130 NOTE 1 The multi-assurance approach allows applying multiple predefined EALs to products with assets of  
3131 different sensitivity. However, for the same reasons as for PPs in the general model, PP-Configurations can claim  
3132 sets of SARs that are different from predefined EALs and/or that contain extended SARs.

3133 A PP-Configuration may define distinctive names for the sets of SARs that apply to the entire TOE and to  
3134 each sub-TSF. However, the use of an (augmented) predefined EAL or an (augmented) assurance  
3135 package defined in one of the PP-Configuration's components or in another external reference requires  
3136 the usage of the same name.

3137 A multi-assurance PP-Configuration shall provide an **assurance rationale** for:

- 3138 — the consistency of the global set of SARs with regard to the threat models as defined in the SPDs  
3139 of the PPs and PP-Modules in the PP-Configuration, and
- 3140 — the consistency of the global set of SARs and all the sets of SARs for the sub-TSF with each other.

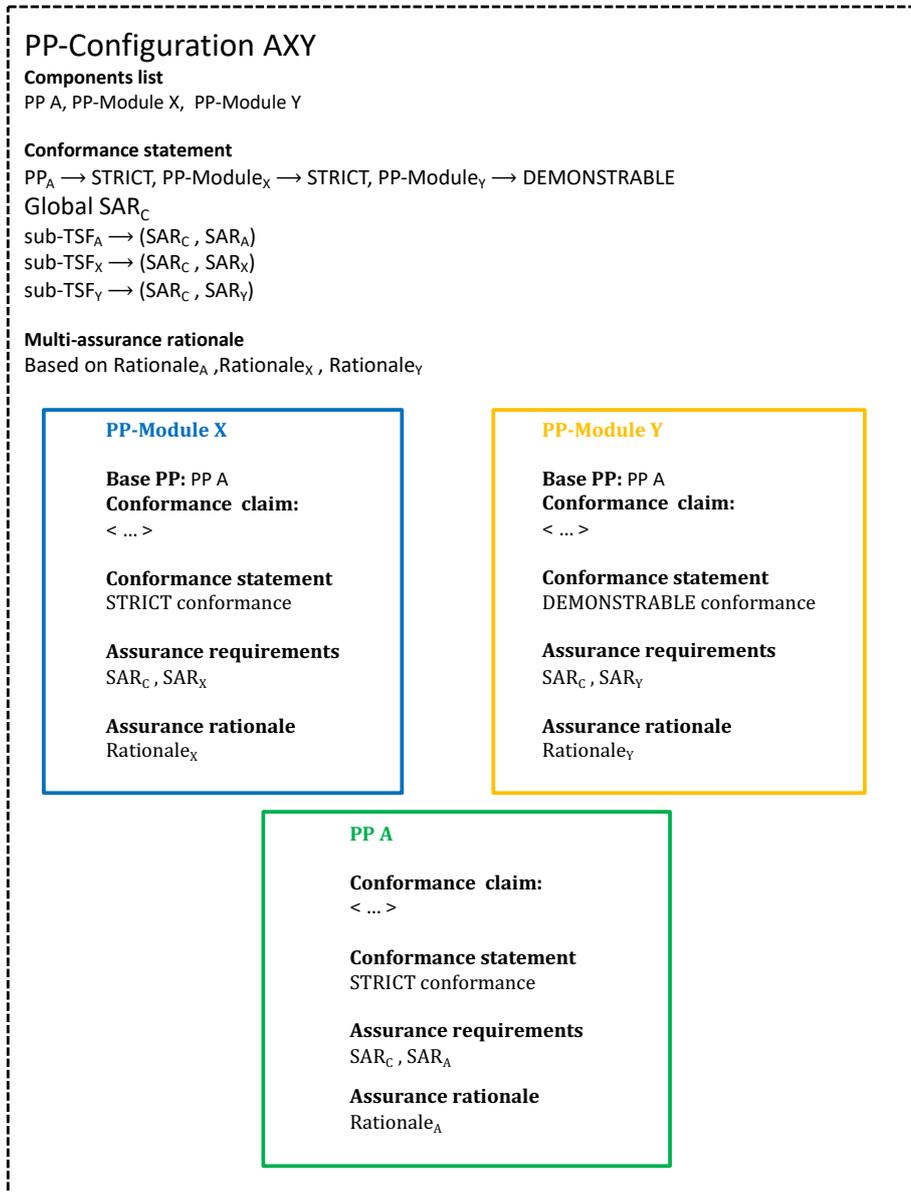
3141 NOTE 2 In most cases, the global set of SARs can be built as the common set of SARs that apply to all of the sub-  
3142 TSFs. However, as it is the case with STs in the general model, the PP-Configuration can require additional or  
3143 higher SARs. The evaluation of the PP-Configuration will ensure the consistency of the claim, similar to the general  
3144 model for the compliance with two or more PPs defining different sets of SARs, and similar to the approach for a  
3145 multi-assurance ST which can extend the sets of SARs defined in the PP-Configuration the ST claims conformance  
3146 to.

3147 NOTE 3 A PP-Configuration cannot claim less assurance requirements as the global set of SARs/assurance  
3148 package than those contained in the common set of SARs that apply to all of the sub-TSFs. NOTE 4 The PP-  
3149 Configuration assurance rationale contributes to ensuring that the multiple sets of SARs do not undermine the  
3150 security expected for the assets that are shared between the PPs and PP-Modules in the PP-Configuration. The PP-  
3151 Configuration assurance rationale should rely on and/or reuse the assurance rationales given in the PPs and PP-  
3152 Modules.

3153 Figure 6 shows an example of multi-assurance PP-Configuration with one PP, A, and two PP-Modules, X  
3154 and Y. SAR<sub>c</sub> is the common set of SARs defined in A, X and Y, which has been chosen as the global set of  
3155 SARs for the entire TOE. In the example, the sets of SARs that apply to the sub-TSFs defined in A, X and Y  
3156 are unchanged as well.

3157 NOTE 4 The rules allow to augment the sets of SARs.

3158 NOTE 5 SAR<sub>C</sub> may be empty, i.e. there is no common SAR in A, X, Y. In such a case, the author of the PP-  
 3159 Configuration must choose another global set of SARs.



3160  
 3161 **Figure 5 — Example of PP-Configuration**

3162  
 3163 **11.3.3 Usage of PP-Configurations**

3164 Figure 6 shows the usage of single and multi-assurance PP-configurations.

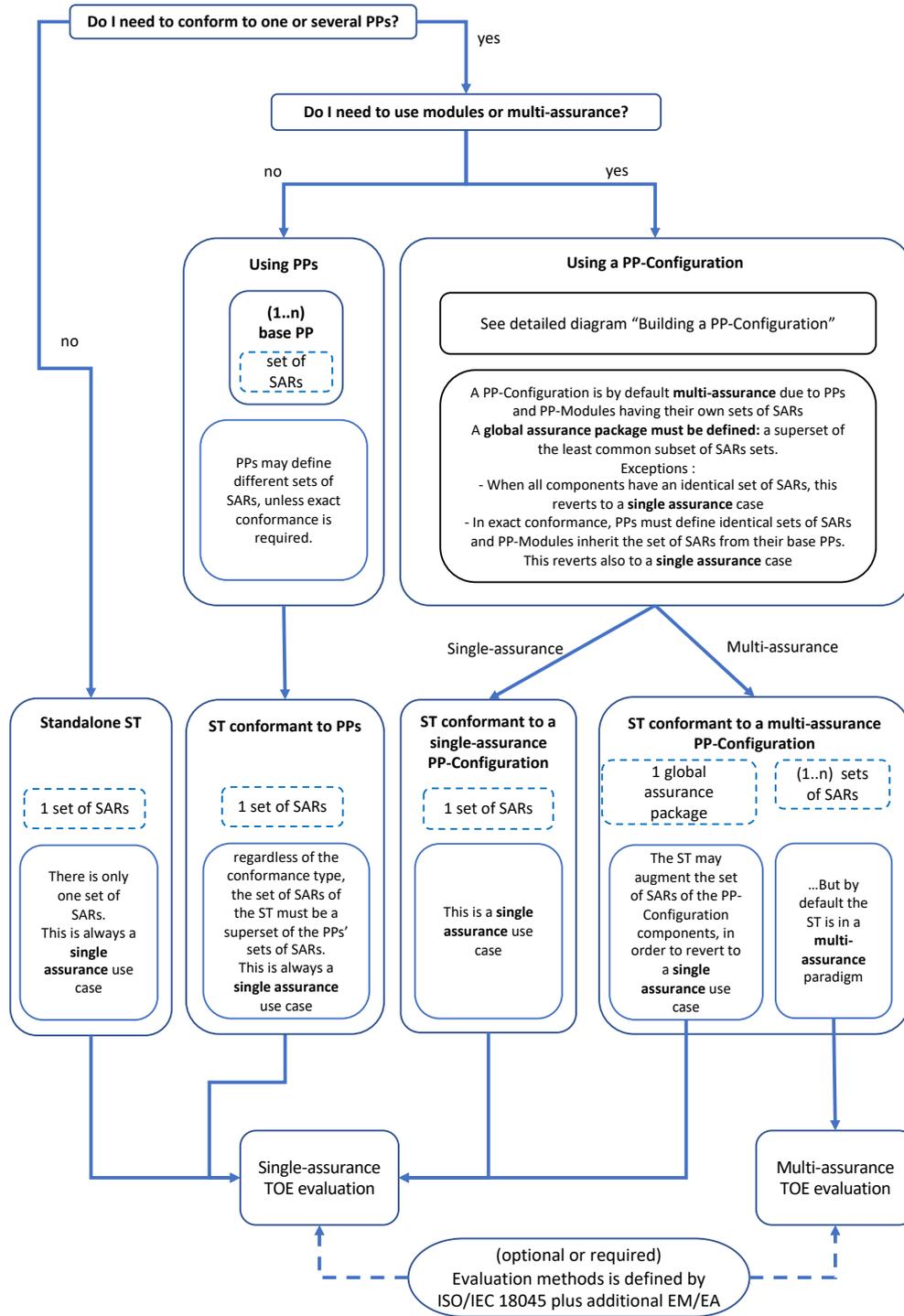
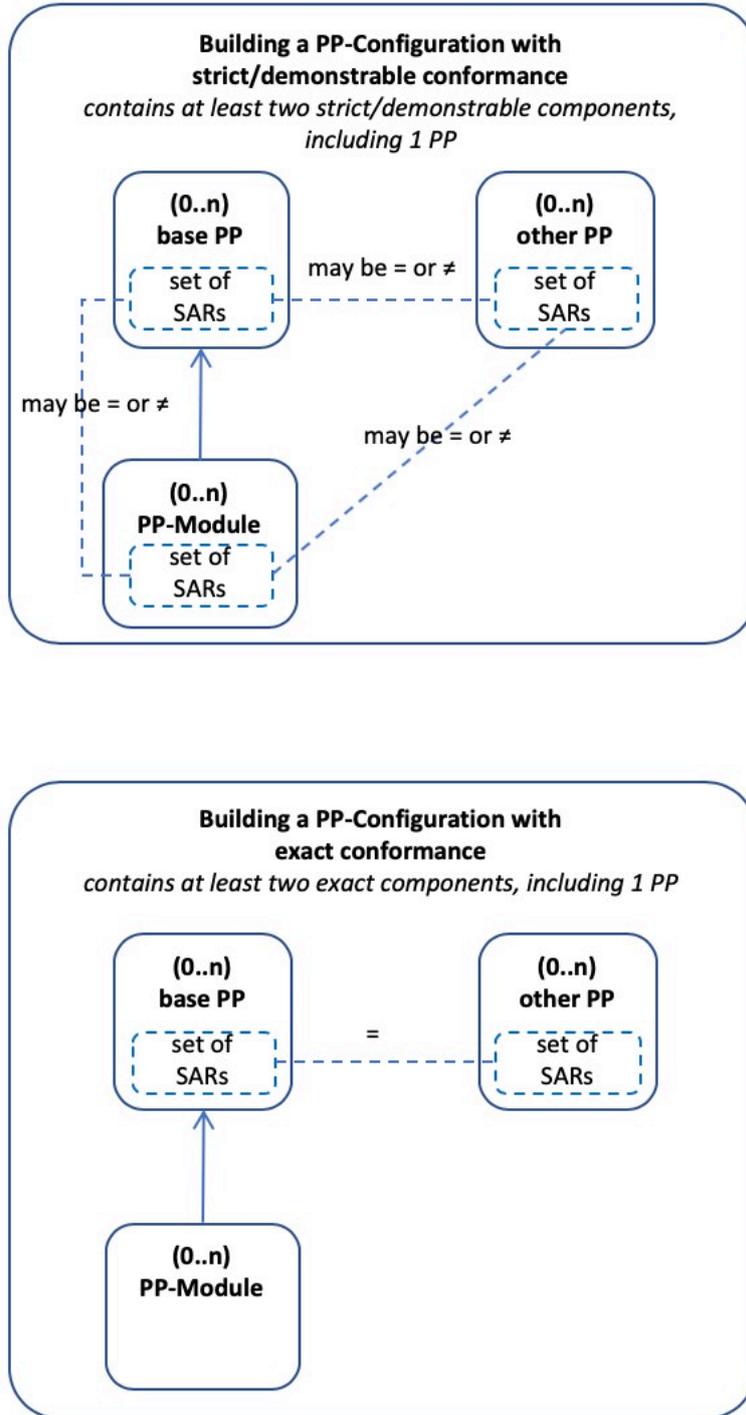


Figure 6 — Usage of single and multi-assurance PP-Configurations

3165  
3166  
3167

3168



3169

**Figure 7 — Components of PP-Configurations**

3170 **12 Security Targets**

3171 **12.1 General**

3172 A ST is a document that describes a specific TOE, the conformance claims applicable to the evaluation of  
 3173 the TOE, the security problem to be addressed, the security objectives for the TOE and its operational  
 3174 environment, the security requirements applicable to solving the stated security problem, and  
 3175 additional material necessary to describe the TOE sufficiently for evaluation. STs are generally based

3176 upon PPs or PP-Configurations that describe a security problem and security requirements for a TOE  
3177 type that is relevant to the specific TOE.

3178 A ST is typically produced by a developer and the audience for the ST includes evaluators, certifying  
3179 bodies and end users of the evaluated TOE.

3180 Annex D provides further information about STs that **shall** be used in conjunction with the present  
3181 clause.

## 3182 12.2 Conformance claims

3183 The conformance claims of a ST:

3184 a) **shall** state the edition of **ISO/IEC 15408** to which the ST claims conformance.

3185 b) **shall** describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-2 (security functional requirements) as  
3186 either:

3187 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant** – A ST is ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant if all SFRs in that ST  
3188 are based only upon functional components in the ISO/IEC 15408-2, or

3189 — **ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended** – A ST is ISO/IEC 15408-2 extended if at least one SFR in that  
3190 ST is not based upon functional components in ISO/IEC 15408-2.

3191 NOTE 1 When a TOE is successfully evaluated to a ST, any conformance claims of the ST also hold for  
3192 the TOE. A TOE **can** therefore also claim to be ISO/IEC 15408-2 conformant.

3193 c) **shall** describe the conformance to ISO/IEC 15408-3 (security assurance requirements) as  
3194 either:

3195 — **ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant** – A ST is ISO/IEC 15408-3 conformant if all SARs in that ST  
3196 are based only upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3, or

3197 — **ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended** – A ST is ISO/IEC 15408-3 extended if at least one SAR in that  
3198 ST is not based upon assurance components in ISO/IEC 15408-3.

3199 d) **may** include a claim made with respect to packages.

3200 NOTE 1 More than one package **can** be claimed in a ST.

3201 Where STs claim conformance to PPs or PP-Configurations they **shall** not also claim  
3202 conformance to the packages included in the PPs or the PP-Configuration's components unless,  
3203 for the case of multi-assurance the package has been augmented by the ST.

3204 For the exact conformance case, STs **shall** not claim nor augment any packages.

3205 NOTE 2 For exact conformance, it is allowed to claim conformance to a PP that claims conformance to a  
3206 package, or a PP-Configuration that has components that claim conformance to a package, but those are  
3207 not reflected in the ST's conformance claim.

3208 If a package claim is made, it **shall** consist of one of the following claims for each package:

3209 — **Package name Conformant** - A ST is conformant to a package if:

3210 — For functional packages, all constituent parts (security problem definition, security  
3211 objectives, and SFRs) of that ST are identical to the SFRs in the functional package,

3212 — For assurance packages, the SARs of that ST are identical to the SARs in the assurance  
3213 package.

3214 — **Package name Augmented** – A ST claims augmentation of a package if:

3215 — For functional packages, all constituent parts (SPD, security objectives, and SFRs) of that  
3216 ST contain all constituent parts given in the functional package but **shall** contain at least  
3217 one additional SFR or one SFR that is hierarchically higher than an SFR in the package.

- 3218 — For assurance packages, the SARs of that ST contain all SARs in the assurance package,  
 3219 but **shall** contain at least one additional SAR or one SAR that is hierarchically higher  
 3220 than an SAR in the assurance package;
- 3221 — **Package name Tailored – This claim is not valid for STs.**
- 3222 e) **may** also include a conformance claim with respect to PPs:
- 3223 — **PP Conformant** - A PP or TOE meets specific PP(s).
- 3224 — A Direct Rationale ST **may** only claim conformance to one or more other Direct Rationale  
 3225 PPs (see Annex B).
- 3226 f) **may** also include a conformance claim with respect to PP-Configurations:
- 3227 — A ST **may** claim conformance with one or more PP-Configurations when the conformance  
 3228 statement for the PP-Configuration requires strict, demonstrable or a list of strict and  
 3229 demonstrable conformance.
- 3230 **NOTE 1** A multi-assurance ST **must conform to one multi-assurance PP-Configuration, and no**  
 3231 **other PP or PP-Configuration.** For more details, see clause 12.5.
- 3232 — A ST **shall not** claim conformance to more than one PP-Configuration when the conformance  
 3233 statement for the PP-Configuration requires exact conformance.
- 3234 — A Direct Rationale ST **shall** only claim conformance to a PP-Configuration if that PP-  
 3235 Configuration uses the Direct Rationale approach.
- 3236 **NOTE 2** PP-Configurations **may** be used by STs in a manner similar to that employed for PPs.
- 3237 **NOTE 3** The evaluation of a PP-Configuration **can** be performed upfront, independently of any  
 3238 product evaluation. Alternatively, the evaluation of a PP-Configuration **can** be performed during the  
 3239 evaluation of a conformant ST, prior to evaluating the ST conformance claim. See 13.3 for a discussion  
 3240 of the evaluation of PP-Configurations.
- 3241 **NOTE 4** PP-Modules are used to build specific PP-Configurations on top of one or more base  
 3242 PPs/PP-Modules. Hence, PP-Modules **shall** only be used by STs through claimed PP-Configurations.
- 3243 g) If evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities are identified in the conformance statement  
 3244 of any package, PP or PP-Module within the PP-Configuration to which the ST claims  
 3245 conformance, then the conformance claim shall also include a statement in the following form:  
 3246 **“The TOE is evaluated using evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities defined in**  
 3247 **<reference>.”**
- 3248 In this statement, *<reference>* is replaced by the identification of the location of the relevant  
 3249 evaluation methods and evaluation activities.
- 3250 STs that reference evaluation methods and/or activities are not required to reproduce the text  
 3251 of the evaluation methods and/or activities within the ST.
- 3252 A ST **shall** only make a conformance claim for evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities  
 3253 that are included in a package, PP, or PP-Module in a PP-Configuration claimed by the ST.
- 3254 **NOTE 1** In the case of PP-Configurations, packages can also include evaluation methods and/or  
 3255 activities, in this case the packages are included in the PP or PP-Module using them.
- 3256 **NOTE 2** The reader is reminded that it could be the case that a ST claims no PP or PP-Configuration but can still  
 3257 directly specify a package.
- 3258 **NOTE 3** A ST may claim conformance with several PPs/PP-Configurations with different types of conformance.  
 3259 The consistency of the combination of demonstrable and strict conformance shall be validated as part of the ST  
 3260 evaluation.
- 3261 For more information on the conformance statements for STs see Annex D.
- 3262 For more information on conformance types see Annex E.

### 3263 12.3 Assurance requirements

3264 A ST that claims conformance with ISO/IEC 15408-3 (possibly extended) shall define the global set of  
3265 SARs that applies to the TOE.

3266 A ST may define a distinctive name for the set of SARs that are applicable. However, the use of an  
3267 (augmented) predefined EAL or an (augmented) assurance package defined in an applicable external  
3268 reference shall require the usage of the same name.

### 3269 12.4 Additional requirements in the exact conformance case

#### 3270 12.4.1 Additional requirements for the conformance claim

3271 A ST shall not claim conformance to an exact conformance PP/PP-Configuration and, at the same time,  
3272 to other PPs/PP-Configurations which are not of exact conformance type, i.e. a PP/PP-Configuration of  
3273 exact conformance shall not be combined with strict or demonstrable conformance.

#### 3274 12.4.2 Additional requirements for the SPD

3275 A ST claiming exact conformance:

- 3276 — shall contain the SPD of all the packages and the PPs or PP-Configuration to which it is claiming  
3277 exact conformance, including all SPD elements.
- 3278 — shall not include any SPD-elements that are not present in the packages or PPs/PP-  
3279 Configuration to which it is claiming exact conformance.

3280 NOTE The SPD that is instantiated in the ST from a PP-Configuration contains exactly the SPD-elements  
3281 present in the PP-Configuration's components (PPs and PP-Modules). It should be noted that PP-Configuration  
3282 components can combine to change or eliminate SPD-elements (e.g., an assumption in a base PP may become a  
3283 threat that is countered by a PP-Module on top of that base PP), so the result that appears in the ST considers  
3284 these kinds of modifications. See 11.3.

#### 3285 12.4.3 Additional requirements for the security objectives

3286 A ST claiming exact conformance:

- 3287 — shall contain all the security objectives for the TOE specified in all of the PPs to which it claims  
3288 conformance;
- 3289 — shall not specify additional security objectives for the TOE that are not specified in the  
3290 combination of the PPs to which it claims conformance;
- 3291 — shall contain all of the security objectives for the operational environment that are specified in  
3292 the combination of PPs to which it claims conformance; and
- 3293 — shall not specify additional security objectives for the operational environment that are not  
3294 present in the combination of PPs to which it claims conformance.

3295 NOTE The same is true for PP-Configurations. The security objectives that are instantiated in the ST from a  
3296 PP-Configuration contain exactly the security objectives present in the PP-Configuration's components. It should  
3297 be noted that PP-Configuration components can combine to change or eliminate security objectives (e.g., a  
3298 security objective for the environment in a base PP may become a TOE security objective in a PP-Module using  
3299 that base PP), so the resulting ST reflects these kinds of modifications.

#### 3300 12.4.4 Additional requirements for the security requirements

3301 A ST shall contain all the SARs present in the PPs, and all the SFRs present in the PP-Configuration  
3302 components(s), with the following exceptions:

- 3303 — ST authors shall not include additional or hierarchically higher security requirements;
- 3304 — SFRs designated as selection-based SFRs in the PPs or PP-Modules shall be excluded if the  
3305 selection that requires their inclusion is not chosen by the ST author;
- 3306 — SFRs designated as optional SFRs in the PPs or PP-Modules may be included or excluded while  
3307 maintaining its exact conformance claim.

3308 NOTE 1 See 7.3.2.6 for further information in regard to optional and selection-based SFRs.

3309 NOTE 2 See Annex E for further information on PP conformance.

## 3310 12.5 Additional requirements in the multi-assurance case

3311 A multi-assurance ST **shall** claim conformance to exactly one multi-assurance PP-Configuration and no  
3312 other PP or PP-Configuration.

3313 A multi-assurance ST **shall** organize the TSF in sub-TSFs, and claim a specific set of SARs for each of the  
3314 sub-TSFs and a global set of SARs for the entire TOE: this can be achieved exclusively through the  
3315 conformance to a multi-assurance PP-Configuration. The TSF structure defined in the ST is inherited  
3316 from the PP-Configuration, and the sets of SARs that apply to them in the ST are either identical to the  
3317 ones defined in the PP-Configuration or augmented.

3318 A multi-assurance ST **may** extend the PP-Configuration with additional SFRs (and related SPD and  
3319 security objectives as necessary) so that each new element completes at a minimum one PP or PP-  
3320 Module of the PP-Configuration provided the required conformity rules are satisfied. That is, the new  
3321 SFRs are aimed at extending the sub-TSFs defined by the components of the PP-Configuration. As a  
3322 consequence, the extended sub-TSFs are subject to the set of SARs as defined in the original PPs/PP-  
3323 Modules.

3324 A multi-assurance ST **may** claim the sets of SARs defined in the multi-assurance PP-Configuration, or  
3325 **may** provide a rationale to claim “augmented” sets of SARs, similar to STs in the general model.

3326 NOTE 1 In order to conform with two or more PPs according to their respective sets of SARs, a multi-assurance  
3327 PP-Configuration composed of the PPs must be defined and claimed by the ST.

3328 NOTE 2 A ST that claims conformance with a multi-assurance PP-Configuration and augments all the applicable  
3329 sets of SARs to reach the same set of SARs for the entire TOE and all of the sub-TSFs becomes a single-assurance  
3330 ST. In this case, the evaluation of the TOE shall follow the single-assurance evaluation approach.

3331 NOTE 3 A ST that claims conformance with several PPs/PP-Configurations can only define a global set of SARs  
3332 that applies to the entire TOE, thus giving rise to a single-assurance ST. The ASE rules for ensuring the consistency  
3333 of the assurance requirements of the single-assurance ST with regard to the PPs/PP-Configurations apply.

3334 NOTE 4 A ST that claims conformance with one single-assurance PP-Configuration, i.e. which defines only one  
3335 set of SARs for the entire TOE and its parts, cannot become a multi-assurance ST. The reason is that the multi-  
3336 assurance consistency rules are defined at PP-Configuration level. In order to achieve this, a multi-assurance PP-  
3337 Configuration derived from the PP-Configuration must be defined and evaluated.

3338 For more information on multi-assurance PP-Configurations and STs see 12.4.2. A ST that claims  
3339 conformance with exactly one multi-assurance PP-Configuration may become a **multi-assurance ST** by  
3340 defining, for each sub-TSF, the applicable set of SARs. This will either be the same set of SARs inherited  
3341 from the PP-Configuration, or a larger set (augmentation) which requires the update of the assurance  
3342 rationale provided in the PP-Configuration.

3343 A multi-assurance ST may define distinctive names for the sets of SARs that apply to the entire TOE and  
3344 to each sub-TSF. The names **shall** be consistent with the names given in the PP-Configuration. In  
3345 general, the use of an (augmented) predefined EAL or an (augmented) assurance package defined in an  
3346 applicable external reference requires the usage of the same name.

3347 A multi-assurance ST that extends the sets of SARs of the PP-Configuration it claims conformance to  
3348 **shall** provide an assurance rationale that justifies the consistency of the extension.

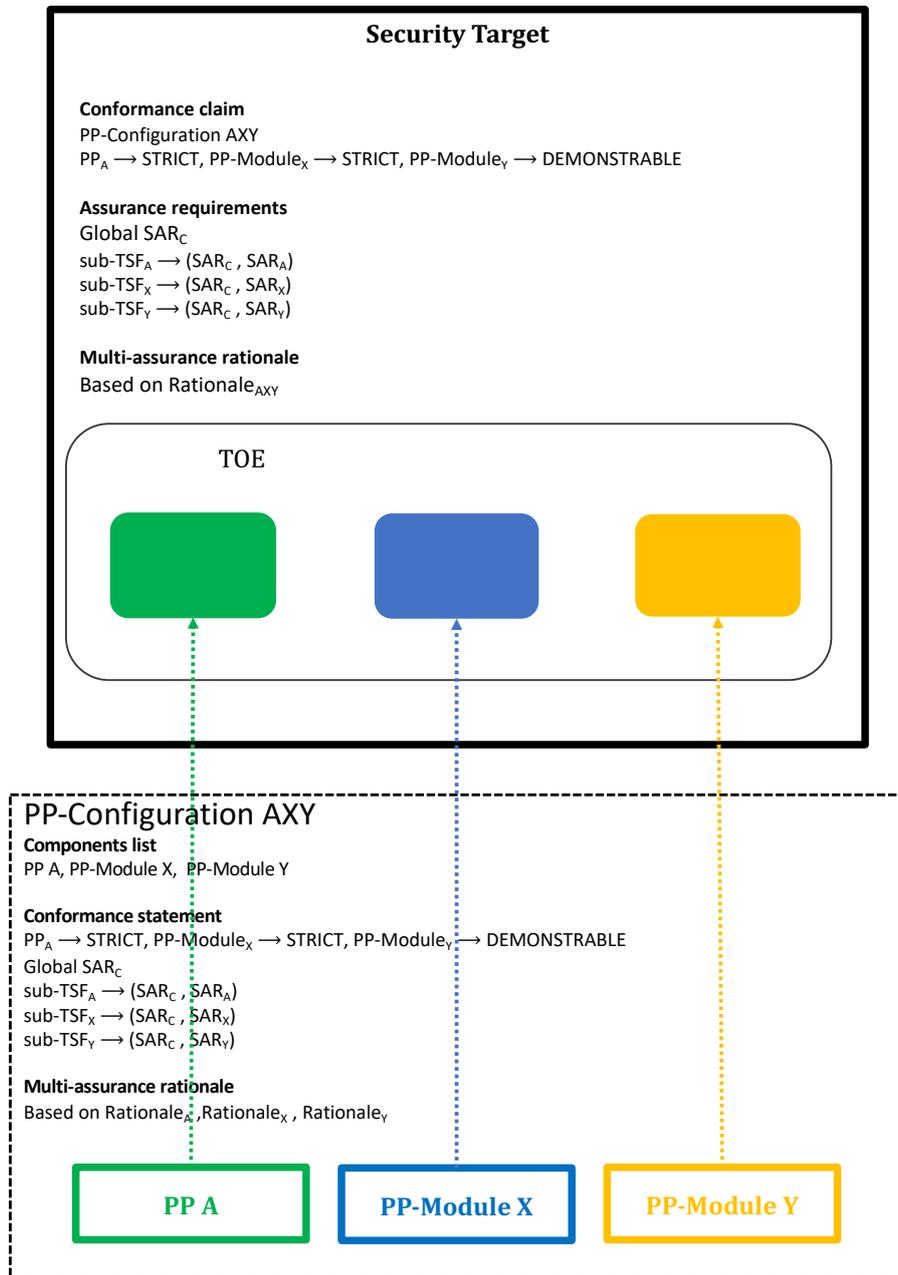
3349 A multi-assurance ST **shall** conform to each and all of the individual conformance types that are  
3350 identified in the conformance statement of the multi-assurance PP-Configuration.

3351 NOTE 5 A ST that claims conformance with more than one PP/PP-Configuration can only define a global set of  
3352 SARs, which applies to the entire TOE. In such a case, the ASE rules for ensuring the consistency of the assurance  
3353 requirements of the ST with regard to the PPs/PP-Configurations apply.

3354 NOTE 6 A ST that claims conformance with one single-assurance PP-Configuration cannot become a multi-  
3355 assurance ST. The reason is that the multi-assurance consistency rules are defined in ACE at PP-Configuration

3356 level. In order to define a multi-assurance ST, a multi-assurance PP-Configuration should be derived from the  
 3357 single-assurance PP-Configuration first.

3358 Figure 8 shows an example of a multi-assurance ST that claims conformance to PP-Configuration “AXY”  
 3359 composed of PP A and two PP-Modules X and Y. The TSF structure consists of the sub-TSF defined in A,  
 3360 X and Y. The global set of SARs ( $SAR_C$ ) and the multiple sets of SARs applicable to the sub-TSFs come  
 3361 from the PP-Configuration without any augmentation.



3362  
 3363

**Figure 8 — Example of multi-assurance ST**

3364 **13 Evaluation and evaluation results**

3365 **13.1 General**

3366 This Clause 13 presents the expected results from PP, PP-Configuration and ST/TOE evaluations  
 3367 performed according to either ISO/IEC 18045, and/or additional evaluation methods and activities.

3368 The goal of evaluation is to provide objective and repeatable results that can be cited as evidence, even  
 3369 if there is no absolute objective scale for representing the results of a security evaluation.

3370 NOTE A trade-off between following the relevant state of the art and achieving perfect repeatability may be  
 3371 required. Therefore, properties such as objectivity and repeatability are not seen as absolute by the standard, but  
 3372 rather as goals that can be approached in different ways. For example, ISO/IEC 15408-4 provides one such  
 3373 framework for preserving objectivity and repeatability when deriving evaluation activities from ISO/IEC 18045.

3374 An evaluation result represents the findings of a specific type of investigation of the security properties  
 3375 of a TOE. Such a result does not automatically guarantee fitness for use in any particular application  
 3376 environment. The decision to accept a TOE for use in a specific application environment is based on  
 3377 consideration of many security issues including the evaluation findings.

3378 Figure 9 describes the various evaluations that are needed to provide confidence in the evaluation  
 3379 results for a TOE.

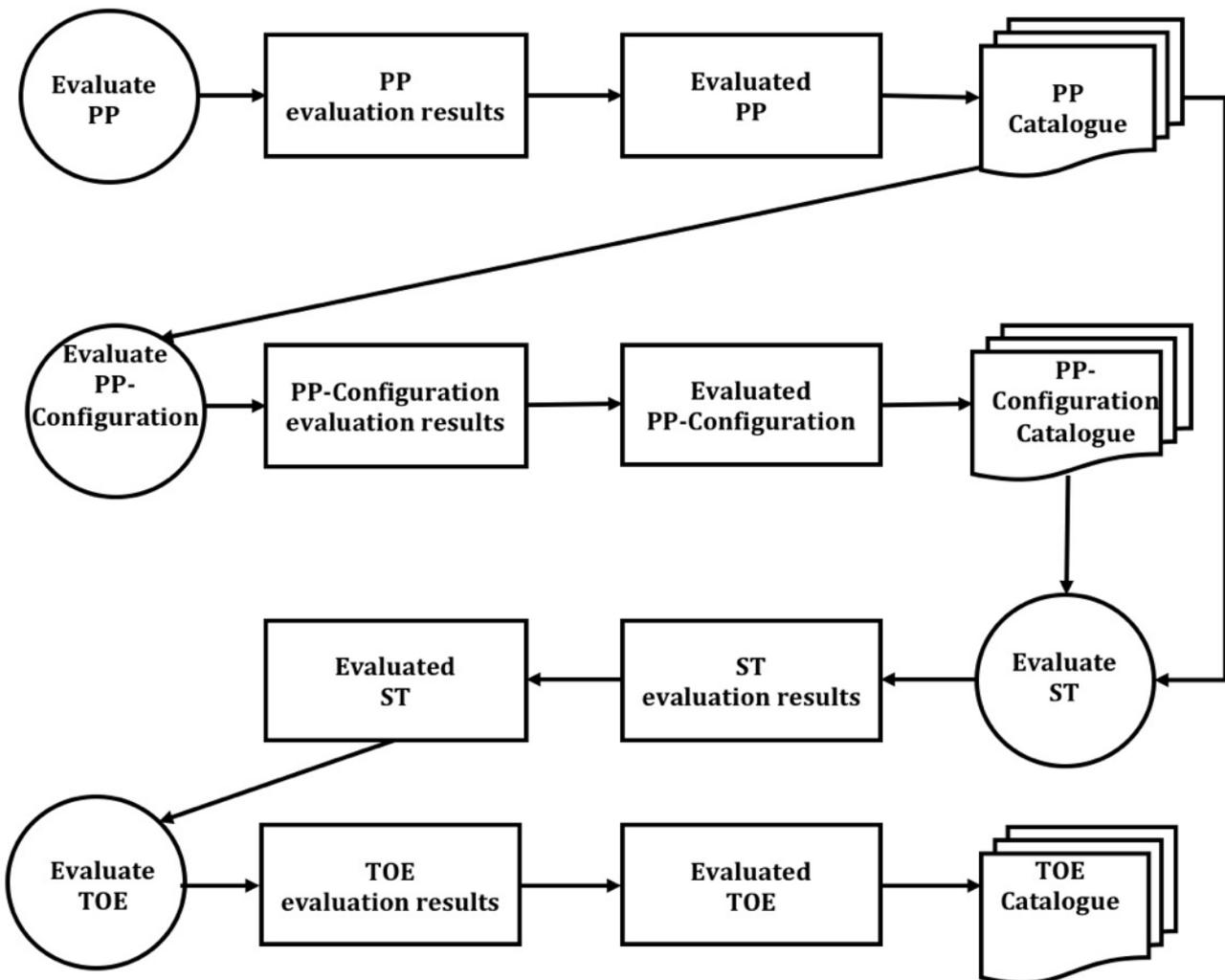


Figure 9 — Evaluation Flow

3380  
 3381 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) gives criteria for four types of evaluation:

- 3382 a) A PP evaluation which is based on the APE class given in ISO/IEC 15408-3, described in 13.3,  
 3383 b) A PP-Configuration evaluation which is based on the ACE class given in ISO/IEC 15408-3,  
 3384 described in 13.3,  
 3385 c) A ST evaluation which is based on the ASE class given in ISO/IEC 15408-3, described in 13.4,  
 3386 and  
 3387 d) A TOE evaluation, which is based on an evaluated ST and the criteria for evaluating the security  
 3388 requirements claimed by the ST, described in 13.5.

3389 PP and PP-Configuration evaluations provide confidence that the PP and/or PP-Configuration meets the  
 3390 requirements of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts). Catalogues of PPs and PP-Configurations can be maintained  
 3391 by authorities or others which define the criteria for inclusion in the catalogue.

3392 NOTE 1 The criteria for inclusion in a catalogue are out of scope for ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts).

3393 PP-Modules are only evaluated as part of an evaluation based on a PP-Configuration.

3394 Packages are only evaluated as part of a PP-Configuration, PP, or ST evaluation.

3395 NOTE 2 In practice, a ST that claims conformance with some non-evaluated PP-Configurations **may** still be  
 3396 evaluated by performing the PP-Configuration evaluation first.

3397 A ST evaluation leads to an intermediate result that is used in the frame of a TOE evaluation. Optionally,  
 3398 STs **may** be developed with conformance claims to packages, PPs and PP-Configurations.

3399 ST/TOE evaluations **can** lead to catalogues of evaluated TOEs. In many cases these catalogues refer to  
 3400 the IT products that the TOEs are derived from rather than the specific TOE. Therefore, the existence of  
 3401 an IT product in a catalogue **cannot** be construed as meaning that the whole IT product has been  
 3402 evaluated; instead the actual ST defines the actual extent of the TOE evaluation.

3403 Refer to the bibliography for examples of such catalogues.

## 3404 13.2 The evaluation context

3405 In order to achieve greater comparability between evaluation results, evaluations **should** be performed  
 3406 within the framework of an evaluation scheme.

3407 NOTE 1 The ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not state requirements for such evaluation schemes.

3408 Supporting greater comparability between evaluation results is also achieved through the use of  
 3409 common evaluation methods producing these evaluation results. Use of a common evaluation  
 3410 methodology contributes to the repeatability and objectivity of the results but is not by itself sufficient.  
 3411 Many of the evaluation criteria require the application of expert judgement and background knowledge  
 3412 for which consistency is more difficult to achieve. In order to enhance the consistency of the evaluation  
 3413 findings, the final evaluation results **can** be submitted to a certification process.

3414 NOTE 2 ISO/IEC 14508 does not provide requirements to assess the competences of developers or evaluators.  
 3415 ISO/IEC 19896-3 provides competency requirements for ISO/IEC 15408 evaluators that can be used as a support  
 3416 in the evaluation process. However, it only addresses basic methodology competences and does not address the  
 3417 way to assess:

- 3418 — technology-specific knowledge and skills such as those required to perform ADV, ATE or AVA\_VAN  
 3419 evaluation on a given product type;
- 3420 — sector-specific knowledge that is typically required to perform ASE, APE or ACE evaluation.

3421 Additionally, specific skills required by ISO/IEC 15408 evaluations may require additional competence  
 3422 assessment methods. For example, to assess skills related to formal methods.

3423 For ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), the generic methodology for IT security evaluations is given in ISO/IEC  
 3424 18045. More specific evaluation methods and activities **may** be derived from ISO/IEC 18045 by using  
 3425 the framework given in ISO/IEC 15408-4, by refining standard assurance components or by defining  
 3426 extended assurance components.

3427 EXAMPLE

3428 It may be necessary for PP authors to augment the generic methodology for IT security evaluations given in  
3429 ISO/IEC 18045 with a method that includes technology-specific evaluation activities.

3430 A certification process, which is outside the scope of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), **can** include an  
3431 independent inspection of the results of the evaluation leading to the production of a final certificate or  
3432 approval, which **can** be made publicly available. The certification process is a means of gaining greater  
3433 consistency in the application of IT security criteria.

### 3434 **13.3 Evaluation of PPs and PP-Configurations**

3435 Basing a PP or a ST on an evaluated PP has two advantages:

- 3436 — There is much less risk that there are errors, ambiguities, or gaps in the PP. If any problems with  
3437 a PP, that would have been found during the evaluation of that PP, are found during the writing  
3438 or evaluation of the new ST, significant time **can** elapse before the PP is corrected.
- 3439 — Evaluation of the new PP/ST **can** re-use the evaluation results of the evaluated PP, resulting in  
3440 less effort being employed in the evaluation of the new PP/ST.

3441 If the evaluation of a PP is required then the APE criteria, given in ISO/IEC 15408-3 **shall** be used.

3442 If the evaluation of a PP-Configuration is required then the ACE criteria given in ISO/IEC 15408-3 **shall**  
3443 be used.

3444 The goal of such evaluations is to demonstrate that the PP, or PP-Configuration is complete, internally  
3445 consistent, and technically sound and suitable for use as a template on which to build a ST or another  
3446 PP.

3447 The method of stating evaluation results for PPs and PP-Configurations is described in 13.7.

3448 NOTE PP-Modules are not evaluated separately; they are evaluated in the course of evaluating the PP-  
3449 Configuration that uses them.

### 3450 **13.4 Evaluation of STs**

3451 A ST evaluation determines the sufficiency of the TOE, the operational environment and the internal  
3452 consistency of the descriptions and requirements it contains.

3453 The ST evaluation **shall** be carried out by applying the ASE evaluation criteria, defined in ISO/IEC  
3454 15408-3. The precise methods and activities used to apply the ASE criteria is determined by the  
3455 evaluation methodology that is associated with the ST, which **may** be either ISO/IEC 18405 or  
3456 evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC 18045.

3457 The method of stating ST evaluation results is described in 13.7. These results also identify any PP(s)  
3458 and package(s) to which the ST claims conformance.

### 3459 **13.5 Evaluation of TOEs**

3460 A TOE evaluation determines that the correctness of the TOE against the criteria defined in the ST. As  
3461 said earlier, the TOE evaluation does not assess the correctness of the operational environment.

3462 The TOE evaluation is more complex. The principal inputs to a TOE evaluation are the evaluation  
3463 evidence, which includes the TOE and the ST, but will usually also include input from the development  
3464 environment, such as design documents or developer test results.

3465 The TOE evaluation consists of applying the SARs (from the ST) to the evaluation evidence. The precise  
3466 method to apply a specific SAR to a TOE is determined by the ISO/IEC 18045 and by evaluation  
3467 methods and/or activities that are derived from ISO/IEC 18045. Such EMs/EAs are validated outside of  
3468 the ISO/IEC 15408 and ISO/IEC 18045 framework. Users of this document/series should be aware that  
3469 evaluation schemes may not approve the use of particular EMs/EAs. A ST may require EMs/EAs, and an  
3470 evaluation scheme may decide not to carry out evaluations following this ST.

3471 How the results of applying the SARs are documented, and what reports need to be generated and in  
 3472 what detail, is determined by both the evaluation methodology that is used and the evaluation scheme  
 3473 under which the evaluation is carried out.

3474 The TOE evaluation **may** be carried out after TOE development has finished, or in parallel with TOE  
 3475 development, provided that the appropriate assurance components are chosen for this evaluation.

3476 The method of stating ST/TOE evaluation results is described in 13.7.

### 3477 **13.6 Evaluation methods and activities**

3478 Generic IT evaluation methods and activities for each of the security assurance classes given in ISO/IEC  
 3479 15408-3 are provided in ISO/IEC 18045. The evaluation methods and activities given in ISO/IEC 18045  
 3480 are high level and depending on the technology type, the assurance level, or the security problem  
 3481 described, the provision of more specific evaluation methods and activities **may** be needed.

3482 Such evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC 18045. Such methods  
 3483 and activities **may** be published either as an inclusion in PPs, PP-Modules and packages or as separate  
 3484 supporting documents.

### 3485 **13.7 Evaluation results**

#### 3486 **13.7.1 Results of a PP evaluation**

3487 The results of the PP evaluation **shall** include a “Conformance Claim” in accordance with 10.2.

3488 NOTE ISO/IEC 15408-3 provides evaluation criteria for PPs in the APE class.

#### 3489 **13.7.2 Results of a PP-Configuration evaluation**

3490 The results of a PP-Configuration evaluation **shall** include a “conformance claim” in accordance with  
 3491 11.3.

3492 Once a PP-Configuration has been evaluated, a ST evaluation **may** rely on the results of the PP-  
 3493 Configuration evaluation.

3494 NOTE 1 ISO/IEC 15408-3 provides evaluation criteria for PP-Configurations in the ACE class.

3495 NOTE 2 The evaluation of a PP-Configuration **can** arise in two situations, with no impact on the evaluation  
 3496 methodology:

- 3497 – Independently of any product evaluation, or
- 3498 – As the first step of the evaluation of a ST that claims conformity with the PP-Configuration. Otherwise
- 3499 the conformance claim is meaningless and the ST evaluation would fail in this aspect.

#### 3500 **13.7.3 Results of a ST/TOE evaluation**

##### 3501 **13.7.3.1 General**

3502 The results of a ST evaluation **shall** include a “Conformance Claim” as defined in 12.2..

3503 A successful TOE evaluation requires a successful ST evaluation. The result of the TOE evaluation  
 3504 process is either:

- 3505 — A statement that all SARs have been met, and that therefore there is the specified level of
- 3506 assurance that the TOE meets the SFRs as stated in the ST;
- 3507 — A statement that not all SARs have been met and that therefore there is not the specified level of
- 3508 assurance that the TOE meets the SFRs as stated in the ST.

3509 NOTE In some cases the evaluation results are subsequently used in a certification process, but this  
 3510 certification process is outside the scope of ISO/IEC 15408.

3511 If the TOE evaluation has resulted in a pass statement, the underlying product **can** be eligible for  
 3512 inclusion in a catalogue of successfully evaluated products.

3513 **13.7.3.2 Use of ST/TOE evaluation results**

3514 Once a ST and a TOE have been evaluated, asset owners can have the assurance, as defined in the ST,  
 3515 that the TOE, together with the operational environment, counters the stated threats. The evaluation  
 3516 results **may** be used by the asset owner as part of a risk-acceptance decision related to exposing the  
 3517 assets to the threats.

3518 However, risk owners **should** carefully check whether:

- 3519 a) the SPD in the ST matches their own security problem;
- 3520 b) their operational environments conform (or can be made to conform) to the security objectives  
 3521 for the operational environment described in the ST;
- 3522 c) any guidance documents provided by the developer in the context of the TOE evaluation are  
 3523 followed during the installation, configuration, and operation of the TOE.

3524 If any of these conditions do not hold, the assurance **may** not hold true and the evaluation results  
 3525 **should** not be relied upon in a risk-acceptance decision.

3526 Additionally, once an evaluated TOE is in operation, it is probable that previously unknown errors or  
 3527 vulnerabilities in the TOE will be identified. In that case, the developer **may** correct the TOE (to address  
 3528 the vulnerabilities) or change the ST in a way that excludes the newly identified vulnerabilities from the  
 3529 scope of the evaluation. In either case, the old evaluation results **may** no longer be valid

3530 NOTE If assurance is to be maintained, re-evaluation is needed. ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) **may** be used for  
 3531 this re-evaluation, but detailed procedures for re-evaluation are outside the scope of this document.

3532 **13.8 Multi-assurance evaluation**

3533 For a multi-assurance PP-Configuration, the ACE requirements, given in ISO/IEC 15408-3, ensure that  
 3534 the combination of different sets of SARs does not undermine the expected security of the underlying  
 3535 assets, as defined in the SPDs of the PPs and PP-Modules that compose the PP-Configuration.

3536 For a multi-assurance ST, the ASE requirements, given in ISO/IEC 15408-3, ensure that the ST is  
 3537 conformant to a multi-assurance PP-Configuration which satisfies ACE assurance requirements. This  
 3538 means that the organization of the TSF in sub-TSFs and the sets of SARs that apply to them are  
 3539 consistent with the PP-Configuration. For each sub-TSF this means that the multi-assurance ST requires  
 3540 a set of SARs that is either as defined in the PP-Configuration for the corresponding component (PP or  
 3541 PP-Module) or an augmentation.

3542 The general model of the standard, which holds in a multi-assurance evaluation, requires that the  
 3543 evaluator evaluates the TSF in order to ensure the security of the TOE. In the context of multi-  
 3544 assurance, the evaluator still considers the impact on the entire TOE, when evaluating each of the sub-  
 3545 TSFs.

3546 In practice, a multi-assurance evaluation can be seen as several evaluations on the same TOE, according  
 3547 to different PPs. The multi-assurance approach adds the consistency checks that are required to ensure  
 3548 that these evaluations can be performed together. This means in particular that the sets of SARs associated  
 3549 with a sub-TSF does not impact on the other sub-TSFs. Therefore, the evidences required by the SARs of one  
 3550 sub-TSF cannot be negatively impacted by the SARs that have been chosen for the other sub-TSFs.

3551 EXAMPLE Let us imagine that a PP-Configuration selects AVA\_VAN.3 for one sub-TSF. ADV\_TDS.3 will then be  
 3552 required by dependency. The evaluation of ADV\_TDS.3 for this sub-TSF will, by definition, consider all the  
 3553 subsystems of the TOE, regardless of the ADV\_TDS levels of the other sub-TSFs defined in the TOE.

3554 The multi-assurance evaluation of a TOE which complies with a multi-assurance ST consists in  
 3555 evaluating the entire TOE against the global set of SARs and evaluating each of the sub-TSFs against the  
 3556 corresponding sets of SARs, as defined in the ST. The order of the evaluation activities is left to the  
 3557 evaluator. The most suitable order depends on factors such as the actual structure of the TSF in terms of  
 3558 the sub-TSFs and the difference between the global set of SARs and the sets of SARs that apply to the  
 3559 sub-TSFs.

3560 The limitation of multi-assurance evaluation to TOEs (and ST s) that comply with one multi-assurance  
3561 PP-Configuration and the definition of the multi-assurance consistency rules in ACE allow to limit the  
3562 impact on the other assurance classes. Performing a multi-assurance evaluation consists in applying a  
3563 uniform interpretation of all the assurance classes, as defined in ISO/IEC 18405: in the context of a  
3564 multi-assurance evaluation, whenever a SAR mentions the "TOE" it refers to the entire TOE. Whenever a  
3565 SAR mentions the "TSF", it refers to the sub-TSF to which the SAR applies.

3566 NOTE A multi-assurance ST reflects the TSF organization in sub-TSFs defined in the PP-Configuration to  
3567 which the ST claims conformance. This TSF organization does not describe the organization of the TOE's  
3568 implementation in subsystems and modules, but rather associates a given set of security functionalities (sub-TSF)  
3569 with specific assurance requirements. It may happen that sub-TSFs are implemented by different sets of  
3570 subsystems/modules, but there may also be some degree of overlap: a subsystem or module may implement  
3571 functionalities belonging to two different sub-TSFs. This means that the two sets of SARs apply to the common  
3572 subsystem or module (i.e. the union of the sets of SARs applies). In both cases, for each sub-TSF, all of the other  
3573 sub-TSFs belong to the TOE and the corresponding subsystems/modules must be evaluated through the prism of  
3574 the requirements of the sub-TSF.

3575

3576 **14 Composition of assurance**

3577 **14.1 General**

3578 IT Products are almost always composed from several components, whereby some of them **may** be  
3579 evaluated and some are not. Independent product components are often evaluated separately, and the  
3580 question of composing the security assurance of the single components to determine the security  
3581 assurance of the entire product arises.

3582 **EXAMPLE**

3583 Software is composed with evaluated hardware to create an IT product.

3584 Composition of assurance is dependent upon:

- 3585 — the type of composition;
- 3586 — the security function policies, and organizational security policies that the component  
3587 evaluation was based on;
- 3588 — the claimed security assurance, for example the assurance level;
- 3589 — the overall security policies for the entire product.

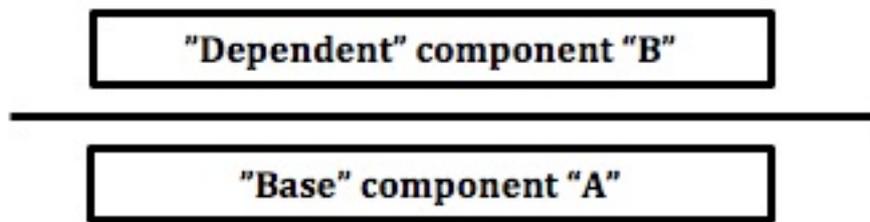
3590 Concepts of composition models are described in subclause 14.2. Evaluation methods by which security  
3591 assurance in such composition models can be provided are given in subclause 14.3. Considerations  
3592 about the re-use of evaluation results related to individual product components in the composition  
3593 approach are addressed in subclause 14.4. Subclause 14.5 addresses the relationship between  
3594 composite and multi-assurance evaluation approaches.

3595 **14.2 Composition models**

3596 **14.2.1 Layered composition model**

3597 In this type of composition, one component is built on top of another component, as pictured in Figure  
3598 10.

3599



**Figure 10 — Layered composition model**

3600 The following assumptions are made in regard to the layered composition model:

- 3601 — The base component is independent from the dependent component;
- 3602 — The base component is not modified by the dependent component;
- 3603 — The dependent component uses the functionality of the base component and not vice versa.

3604 Those performing such a composition should consider that:

- 3605 — the dependent component **can** depend on other functionality than the security functionality in  
3606 the scope of the evaluation of the base component.

3607

## 3608 EXAMPLE

3609 Two examples hereafter can be used to clarify the layered composition model described in Figure 10. The first and  
 3610 main example comes from the smartcard domain, where an evaluation technique has been defined for the layered  
 3611 composition model. In this context, a smartcard is built up with a combination of two parts:

- 3612 — A hardware integrated circuit (IC) part (as a base component) and
- 3613 — A software part on top of it (as a dependent component).

3614 The software part can depend on functionality that does not belong to the evaluated security functionality of the  
 3615 underlying hardware. However, in general almost all instructions of the hardware are part of the hardware's  
 3616 security functionality and are used to implement the security functionality of the software part.

3617 The software part of the smartcard **may** be layered itself, consisting of an

- 3618 — 'Operating System' layer with possibly integrated applicative functionality (as a base component) and an
- 3619 — 'Application' layer on top of it that **may** contain different applications (as a dependent component).

3620 All these parts can be developed by different actors with specific objectives.

3621 In a second example, applications running on a personal computer follow the same principle, with an operating  
 3622 system (OS) acting as a base component and the application layer as a dependent component: the application uses  
 3623 Identification and Authentication provided by the OS, builds its own objects on top of the OS file system, builds its  
 3624 own application structure on top of the OS address space management and separation, and needs to enforce  
 3625 specific properties (e. g. fault tolerance, information flow control). If the OS has already been evaluated then the  
 3626 security functionality of the application layer can be broken down to the evaluated security functionality of the  
 3627 base component. Where this is not possible, the dependent component implements the security functionality by  
 3628 itself. Furthermore, the dependent component can depend on functionality that does not belong to the evaluated  
 3629 security functionality of the underlying base component.

3630 **14.2.2 Network or bi-directional composition model**

3631 In this type of composition, a component uses the specific functionality of another component  
 3632 communicating via some communication channel, as pictured in Figure 11.

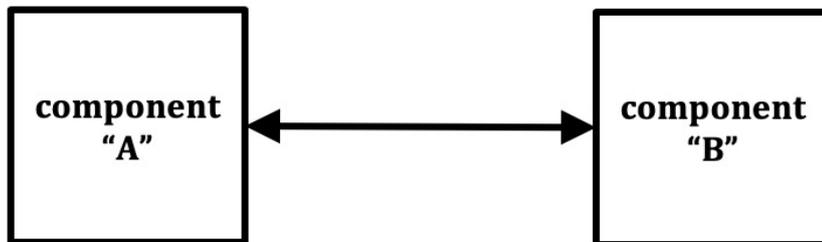


Figure 11 — Network or bi-directional composition model

3633

3634 The following assumptions are made in regard to the network or bi-directional composition model:

- 3635 — The security interdependencies are clearly described;
- 3636 — Both products are separated such that there is no other channel or influence than the defined  
 3637 one;
- 3638 — Both products implement the functionality required to protect the communication channel.

## 3639 EXAMPLE 1

3640 An application (component "A") using the functionality of an external LDAP server (component "B").

3641 Those performing such a composition should consider that:

- 3642 — Security functionality **might** not fit together;

## 3643 EXAMPLE 2

- 3644 Access control may be based on different objects.
- 3645 — Assumptions made on a component **might** not be valid;
- 3646 EXAMPLE 3
- 3647 Assumption on the protection of critical data transferred to another component.
- 3648 — Security functionality **can** have unwanted side effects.
- 3649 EXAMPLE 4
- 3650 A covert channel leaking cryptographic keys.

3651 If these kinds of issues are identified then they should be clearly documented along with the  
 3652 determination of appropriate mitigating controls.

3653 **14.2.3 Embedded composition model**

3654 In this type of composition, a component is used as part of a larger component or product, as pictured in  
 3655 Figure 12.

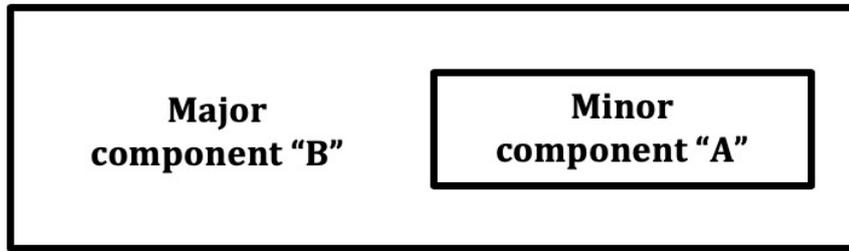


Figure 12 — Embedded composition model

- 3656
- 3657 The following assumptions are made in regard to the embedded composition model:
- 3658 — There is usually no separation between the components;
- 3659 — Each part **can** influence the other via channels and interfaces other than the intended ones.

3660 EXAMPLE

3661 A library or subsystem providing specific security functions as part of a larger product.

3662 Those performing such a composition should consider that due to the lack of separation, components  
 3663 may:

- 3664 — bypass the security functionality of the other components;
- 3665 — modify the security functionality and security policy of other components and of the whole  
 3666 product;
- 3667 — introduce a number of critical side effects.

3668 NOTE If separation is specified, ADV\_ARC given in ISO/IEC 15408-3 describes the criteria for evaluation.

3669 **14.3 Evaluation techniques for providing assurance in composition models**

3670 **14.3.1 General**

3671 To achieve reliable and repeatable evaluation results for the evaluation of IT products (TOEs) that make  
 3672 use of the composition models described in 14.2, a corresponding suitably defined evaluation method is  
 3673 needed.

3674 Subclauses 14.3.2 and 14.3.3 address evaluation techniques for the layered composition model. 14.3.2  
 3675 describes how the ACO class defined in ISO/IEC 15408-3 may be used for composed TOEs, and in 14.3.3  
 3676 an evaluation technique for composite products is provided.

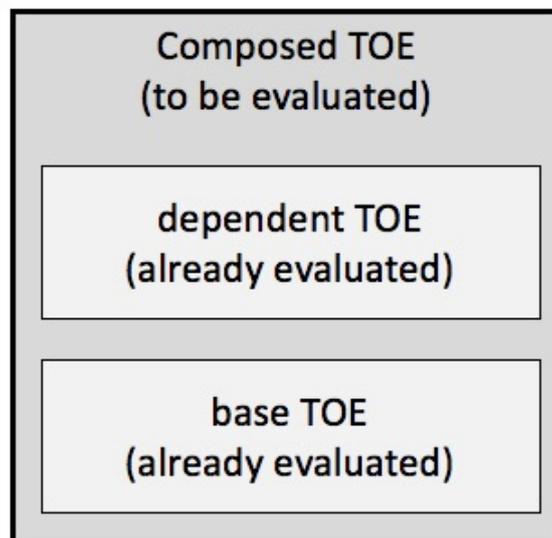
3677 **14.3.2 ACO class for composed TOEs**

3678 The ACO class specified in ISO/IEC 15408-3 addresses a TOE composed of two TOEs using a layered  
 3679 composition model as described in 14.2, both of which have been separately evaluated. These  
 3680 component TOEs can be described as a base TOE and a dependent TOE, as shown in Figure 13. In such  
 3681 case, the ACO class is used for evaluating the composed TOE.

3682 An evaluation of such composed TOE consists of evaluating the interaction between both TOEs,  
 3683 whereby reuse of the evaluation results from both the base TOE and the dependent TOE takes place.

3684 ISO/IEC 15408-5 provides a pre-defined Composed Assurance Packages (CAP) that **may** be used for  
 3685 determining the composed TOE's assurance level.

3686 The ACO class is applicable up to 'Enhanced-basic' assurance level.



3687

3688 **Figure 13 — Composed TOE evaluated using the ACO class**

3688

3689 **14.3.3 Composite evaluation for composite products**

3690 **14.3.3.1 General**

3691 The composite evaluation technique addresses the layered composition model for composite products  
 3692 as described in 14.2 and is devised to meet the following objectives:

- 3693 — independently perform the evaluation of a base component to address several dependent  
 3694 components and customers;
- 3695 — create one or several dependent component(s) to use with an evaluated base component;
- 3696 — install one dependent component onto an evaluated base component to reduce the evaluation  
 3697 effort keeping a high level of confidence.

3698 The composite evaluation technique describes a way to perform transfer of knowledge and reuse of  
 3699 evidence, in order to meet these objectives.

3700 The COMP related assurance families specified in ISO/IEC 15408-3 for the ADV, ALC, ASE, ATE and AVA  
 3701 classes provide evaluation criteria pertinent to composite products using this layered model.

3702 **14.3.3.2 Objectives**

3703 This method for composition of assurance applies to layered products that comprise one independently  
 3704 evaluated base component and one dependent component.

3705 NOTE A dependent component **may** consist of one or more dependent components. For simplification, they  
 3706 are considered as 'one dependent component' in the following.

3707 The composite product is made of the integration of the already evaluated base component (including  
 3708 its base TOE) and the dependent component. Hereby, the base TOE is part of the composite TOE. In the

3709 composite evaluation approach, reuse of the evaluation results already obtained for the base TOE is  
 3710 done, and the evaluation of the dependent component is performed within the evaluation of the  
 3711 composite product, whereby in particular focus is laid on the evaluation of the relationship between the  
 3712 base TOE and the dependent component. Therefore, an assurance level is claimed for and applies to the  
 3713 composite product as a whole and not to the dependent component only.

3714 The composite product, with its base component (including the base TOE) and dependent component,  
 3715 is intended to be efficiently evaluated. The specific composite evaluation technique is set up with the  
 3716 objective to optimize the evaluation of such composite product.

3717 Unlike ACO-based evaluation, this allows a direct comparison with similar products that are evaluated  
 3718 at once without using composition techniques. Moreover, there is no limitation in the assurance level,  
 3719 i.e. the composite product can claim any predefined EAL or well-defined assurance package, including  
 3720 resistance up to 'High attack potential' as defined in ISO/IEC 15408-3 AVA\_VAN.5, whereas ACO is  
 3721 limited by CAP requirements up to 'Enhanced-basic' attack potential. The aim is not to define an  
 3722 additional assurance class, but to define additional assurance requirements for a composite product  
 3723 evaluation.

3724 EXAMPLE

3725 Examples of smartcard devices requiring high-level assurance include payment and digital signature applications.

#### 3726 14.3.3.3 Design of composite product and composite TOE

3727 The composite product is composed of one base component (including its base TOE) and one  
 3728 dependent component whereby in view of evaluation aspects the following rules and constraints apply  
 3729 for the composite product and its composite TOE part:

- 3730 — The base component builds the underlying independent layer of the composite product and  
 3731 contains the base TOE. The base component with its base TOE shall have already been  
 3732 evaluated;
- 3733 — The dependent component builds a supplementary layer of the composite product that is  
 3734 dependent on the base component and that shall be evaluated in the framework of the  
 3735 composite evaluation;
- 3736 — The composite TOE is part of the composite product and covers the entire dependent  
 3737 component, and the base TOE, more detailed a superset of the base TOE functionalities required  
 3738 for the correct and secure execution of the composite product;
- 3739 NOTE A composite TOE **may** contain parts that are independent from the base component or base  
 3740 TOE respectively. For simplification, such parts are considered as belonging to the dependent component.
- 3741 — The dependent component cannot rely on base component functionalities that are in the base  
 3742 component, but lie outside the base TOE (that is, functionalities in the non-TOE part of the base  
 3743 component);
- 3744 — The non-TOE part of the composite product can use base component functionalities, in  
 3745 particular base TOE functionalities. As usual, the composite product evaluation needs to  
 3746 determine that this non-TOE part of the composite product is non-interfering with the  
 3747 dependent component – neither directly nor through the usage of the base component  
 3748 functionalities.
- 3749 — Non-TOE parts of the composite product, in particular non-TOE parts of the evaluated base  
 3750 component (that is, parts in the base component lying outside the base TOE), are considered  
 3751 part of the operational environment of the composite TOE.

3752 NOTE 1: Composite evaluation can be applied independent of the evaluation assurance level (EAL) for the  
 3753 composite product aimed. Where some evaluation activities are not applicable due to the EAL chosen, they are  
 3754 also not expected to be applied.

3755 NOTE 2: This standard only addresses cases where the level of assurance of the base component is equivalent  
 3756 or higher compared to the composite evaluation level.

3757 NOTE 3: In the case where both base component and dependent component have already been evaluated using  
 3758 ISO/IEC 15408, a partial evaluation work **may** be performed regarding the results already obtained from previous  
 3759 dependent component evaluation. Nevertheless, the composite evaluation tasks as defined in this document are  
 3760 still required.

3761 Figure 14 illustrates the general design and layering of a composite product and composite TOE in the  
 3762 framework of the composite evaluation approach.

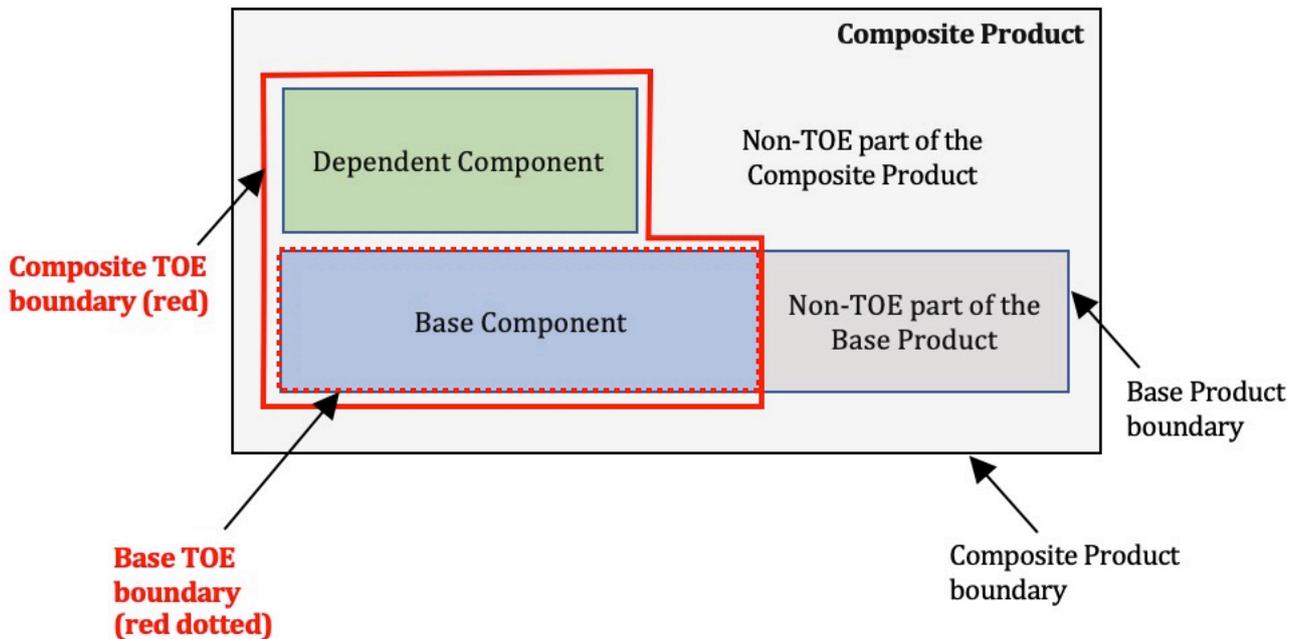


Figure 14 — Composite evaluation

3763

3764 Several composition steps can follow each other. In other terms, the base component can itself be a  
 3765 composite product consisting of an own already evaluated base component and a dependent  
 3766 component.

#### 3767 14.3.3.4 Roles

3768 The base component and the composite product, more detailed the base TOE and the composite TOE,  
 3769 are both undergoing an evaluation. Therefore, both of them have a sponsor, a developer, an evaluator,  
 3770 and an evaluation authority.

3771 For the composite evaluation model addressing the evaluation of the composite product, a preceding  
 3772 finalized evaluation of the base component with its base TOE is expected. The composite evaluation  
 3773 performs the evaluation of the composite product by re-using the evaluation results of the already  
 3774 evaluated base component. Hence, the evaluation of the composite product focuses on the evaluation of  
 3775 the dependent component including its relationship to the base component and hereby takes the  
 3776 underlying base TOE with its related evaluation results into account.

3777 In practice, there is no composite product developer since the composite product results from the  
 3778 integration of the dependent component and the base component. Instead, the relevant developer-  
 3779 related roles here are

- 3780 — the dependent component developer responsible for implementing the dependent component  
 3781 (and further non-TOE parts of the composite product, if applicable),
- 3782 — the base component developer responsible for implementing the base component, and
- 3783 — the composite product integrator responsible for the integration of the base component and the  
 3784 dependent component.

3785 In order to address this role model, the composite evaluation approach and technique defines  
 3786 additional evaluation activities for the above mentioned dependent component developer, the base  
 3787 component developer, and the composite product integrator.

3788 NOTE 1: As already mentioned, the dependent component **may** have undergone a separate evaluation, but the  
 3789 evaluator and evaluation authority of this previous evaluation are not considered here. If the base component and  
 3790 the dependent component were evaluated separately, each of them would have a sponsor, a developer, an  
 3791 evaluator, and an evaluation authority.

3792 NOTE 2: As in the general cases, some actors involved **may** be the same. The composite evaluation context also  
 3793 leads to specific cases of actors having several roles. Each evaluation will associate particular organizations or  
 3794 persons to these generic roles.

3795 EXAMPLE 1:

3796 — The base component developer **may** also be the base component sponsor;

3797 — The base component evaluation authority **may** also be the composite product evaluation authority.

3798 NOTE 3: The composite product integrator is a different role than the developer. While this integrator **may**, in  
 3799 some cases, also be one of the developers defined previously, this is not always the case.

3800 The following example illustrates the role of the composite product integrator:

3801 EXAMPLE 2:

3802 — Native smartcards: The underlying base component is an integrated circuit and the base component  
 3803 developer is the integrated circuit (chip) manufacturer; the dependent component is a card operating  
 3804 system and its application(s) and the dependent component developer is the developer of the smartcard  
 3805 operating system and the application(s). In this case, the role of the composite product integrator is  
 3806 played by:

- 3807 – the chip manufacturer embedding the core of the operating system into the ROM of the chip, then by
- 3808 – the card manufacturer usually loading some parts of the operating system and the applications into
- 3809 NV-Memories (EEPROM and/or Flash) of the chip.

3810 — Java Card technology-enabled devices: The underlying base component is the Java Card runtime  
 3811 Environment (Java Card RE) on chip and the base component developer is the card manufacturer/issuer;  
 3812 the dependent component is the Java Card applet, which can be developed by the applet developer as  
 3813 dependent component developer. In this case, another role is the composite product integrator who can  
 3814 be played by the domain/application service provider or by a trust center loading the applet and often  
 3815 personalizing the card electronically.

### 3816 14.3.3.5 Actions elements and required information

3817 To allow the evaluation of a composite product, the composite evaluation technique identifies two main  
 3818 sets of issues, leading to the following rules:

3819 — The composite product might be insecure due to gaps in the definition, integration or test of the  
 3820 base component and dependent component security mechanisms. In particular, the following  
 3821 properties are to be enforced:

3822 –The assets to be protected are the final composite product assets defined in a dedicated  
 3823 composite product ST;

3824 –The security mechanisms involved in the protection of these assets are those provided by  
 3825 the base component and by the dependent component;

3826 –Some of the security mechanisms and security services provided by the base component  
 3827 **may** require configuration, programming, or activation by the dependent component;

3828 –Evaluation is performed and validated on the final composite product.

3829 To this effect, the composite evaluation technique defines specific action elements to be performed by  
 3830 the actors involved in the evaluation of the base component, as well as the evaluation of the dependent  
 3831 component and the composite product:

- The aforementioned action elements **may** be impossible to perform due to a lack of information sharing between actors. To avoid this, the composite evaluation technique explicitly defines which information is required for each action element.

Table 2 and Table 3 define which SARs **shall** be selected in the composite product ST, and which information is required to allow a composite evaluation.

**Table 2 — Information to be provided to the dependent component developer**

SAR defining the action elements	Information required	Originator of the information
Consistency of composite product ST (ASE_COMP)	ST of the base component. Information related to the base component's security mechanisms and security services that the dependent component has to manage or use.	Base component developer
Composite design compliance (ADV_COMP)	Information (usually in the form of a guidance or user's manual) related to the base component's security mechanisms and security services that the dependent component has to manage or use.	Base component developer

**Table 3 — Information to be provided to the composite product evaluator and composite product evaluation authority**

SAR defining the action elements	Information required	Originator of the information
Consistency of composite product ST (ASE_COMP)	ST of the base component. Information related to the base component's security mechanisms and security services that the dependent component has to manage or use.	Base component developer
	ST of the composite product.	Dependent component developer
Integration of components and consistency check of delivery procedures (ALC_COMP)	Organizational evidence of version correctness, on the basis of configuration lists containing unambiguous version information of the base component and the dependent component having been integrated into the final composite product.	Composite product integrator
	Organizational evidence that components (dependent component or base component) transmitted from an actor to another is securely received, accepted and parameterized.	Composite product integrator Base component developer Dependent component developer
Composite design compliance (ADV_COMP)	Base component-related integration recommendations, typically including the user guidance.	Base component developer
	Evidence that the composite product meets the base component-related integration recommendations.	Composite product integrator
	Evaluation evidence for the base component.	Base component evaluation authority
Composite functional testing (ATE_COMP)	Composite product samples suitable for testing.	Composite product integrator
Composite vulnerability assessment	Evidence allowing the composite product evaluator and the respective evaluation authority to understand the considered attack paths, the performed tests, the effectiveness of countermeasures implemented by the	Base component evaluator

SAR defining the action elements	Information required	Originator of the information
(AVA_COMP)	base component, and explanation related to residual vulnerability linked to integration recommendations included in the user guidance.	
	Evaluation evidence for the base component.	Base component evaluation authority

3841 NOTE 1: In the case of composition, the term ‘developer’ needs further clarification in order to distinguish the  
 3842 actors. Here, the base component developer, the dependent component developer and the composite product  
 3843 integrator can be different entities. Similarly, for the terms ‘evaluator’ and ‘evaluation authority (evaluation  
 3844 scheme)’ further distinguishing of the different entities involved needs to be made.

3845 NOTE 2: The composite product evaluator **may** not need all the detailed results of the base component  
 3846 evaluations. See 14.4 for more detail on re-using evaluation results.

3847 NOTE 3: In the case where both base component and dependent component have already been evaluated, a  
 3848 reduced set of evaluation activities **may** be performed considering the evaluation results already obtained from  
 3849 the previous dependent component evaluation. Nevertheless, the composite evaluation tasks as defined in this  
 3850 document are still required.

3851 EXAMPLE

3852 Smartcard

3853 The smartcard architecture is composed of a hardware platform and a software application on top of the platform.  
 3854 In this case, the platform is the base component, and the application is the dependent component. In a composite  
 3855 product evaluation, the platform is already evaluated, the application is evaluated as part of the composite  
 3856 evaluation and the results of the platform evaluation are re-used.

3857 The hardware platform provides functionality supporting the protection of the composite product’s assets, but the  
 3858 composite product behaviour depends on the software application having to use, configure, and activate the  
 3859 security functionality.

3860 Therefore, the hardware platform evaluation results must provide specific security recommendations and  
 3861 conditions for the software application implementation. The composite product evaluation includes examination  
 3862 that the combination of both components does not lead to any exploitable vulnerability.

3863 A composite evaluation method and associated evaluation activities is developed that includes precise work units  
 3864 with clear statements on the information required from the platform developer and provides an agreed  
 3865 ‘framework’ for information transfer from the platform evaluator to the composite product evaluator.

3866 The information required is already available from the platform evaluation tasks and no additional work is  
 3867 required from the platform developer.

3868 There are no further requirements for the development class ADV.

3869 The user guidance (AGD) of the platform is considered early in the development of the composite product and  
 3870 provides all of the interfaces on which information is needed.

3871 The development and the evaluation of the composite product rely on the proper implementation of the evaluated  
 3872 interfaces of the platform.

3873 The proper use of all relevant interfaces between the platform and the application is in the scope of the composite  
 3874 product evaluation.

3875 Test (ATE) and vulnerability assessment (AVA) are performed on the composite product taking advantage of the  
 3876 available platform evaluation results.

3877 **14.4 Requirements for evaluations using composition techniques**

3878 **14.4.1.1 Re-use of evaluation results**

3879 When composing components into an IT product, it is possible that single components of the product  
 3880 have already been evaluated and that therefore already existing evaluation results for such components  
 3881 could be re-used. However, further evaluation of the IT product (TOE) shall be performed to confirm  
 3882 the security assurance of the entire IT product.

3883 The re-use of evaluation results and evidence related to such components of the IT product (TOE)  
3884 require their availability for the evaluation of the entire IT product (TOE).

3885 Subclauses 14.3.2 and 14.3.3 address evaluation techniques for the layered composition model. 14.3.2  
3886 describes how the ACO class defined in ISO/IEC 15408-3 may be used for composed TOEs, and in 14.3.3  
3887 an evaluation technique for composite products is provided.

3888 The re-use of evaluation results and evidence of components of the IT product (TOE) is dependent  
3889 upon:

- 3890 — the composition model used for the IT product (TOE);
- 3891 — the security assurance to be claimed for the entire IT product (TOE), in particular in  
3892 relationship to its components and their security assurance;
- 3893 — the security properties claimed for the IT product (TOE) and its components.

3894 EXAMPLE

3895 Separation, Information Flow Control and Fault tolerance are examples of security properties.

#### 3896 **14.4.2 Composition evaluation issues**

##### 3897 **14.4.2.1 Composition rationale**

3898 When composing an IT product (TOE) from components using a composition model as described in  
3899 14.2 and using composition techniques for its evaluation, a composition rationale shall be provided for  
3900 the evaluation of the IT product. This includes analysis of at least:

- 3901 — the composition model used for the IT product (TOE);
- 3902 — the security assurance to be claimed for the entire TOE, in particular in relationship to its  
3903 components and their security assurance;
- 3904 — the interfaces and dependencies of the components and their functionality;
- 3905 — the composability of the security function policies and organizational security policies of the  
3906 components;
- 3907 — the preservation of security properties of the components;
- 3908 — for the embedded composition model, aspects of correctness.

##### 3909 **14.4.2.2 Vulnerability analysis**

3910 The IT product composed from components using a composition model as described in 14.2 and using  
3911 composition techniques for its evaluation shall have a vulnerability analysis, in accordance with the  
3912 AVA class, performed on the IT product with its components at a level commensurate with the required  
3913 security assurance for the IT product.

3914 The vulnerability analysis shall be designed in consideration of the analysis of the IT product and its  
3915 composition of components.

##### 3916 **14.4.2.3 Testing**

3917 The IT product composed from components using a composition model as described in 14.2 and using  
3918 composition techniques for its evaluation shall undergo additional testing, using the ATE and IND  
3919 classes given in ISO/IEC 15408-3. It **may** be possible to re-use the testing evaluation results from the  
3920 components, but additional tests for the entire IT product (TOE) shall be designed and performed.

3921 The testing shall be designed in consideration of the analysis of the IT product and its composition of  
3922 components.

##### 3923 **14.4.2.4 Use of the ACO class for composed TOEs**

3924 ISO/IEC 15408-3 describes the ACO class which provides security assurance components that **may** be  
3925 used in support of the evaluation of composed TOEs.

3926 ISO/IEC 15408-5 provides a family of pre-defined assurance packages for composed TOEs (composed  
3927 assurance packages (CAP)) which balance the level of assurance obtained with the cost and feasibility of  
3928 acquiring such assurance for composed TOEs.

3929 NOTE The composed assurance packages are designed to provide assurance that the composition was  
3930 performed to a specified rigour, and do not imply any evaluation assurance level for the composed IT product.

#### 3931 **14.4.2.5 Use of the composite evaluation technique for composite products**

3932 ISO/IEC 15408-3 of this standard describes the COMP families in different assurance classes, which  
3933 provide security assurance components that **may** be used in support of the evaluation of composite  
3934 products.

3935 NOTE The COMP families are designed to provide assurance that the composition was performed correctly,  
3936 without impact on the evaluation assurance level for the composite product.

### 3937 **14.5 Evaluation by composition and multi-assurance**

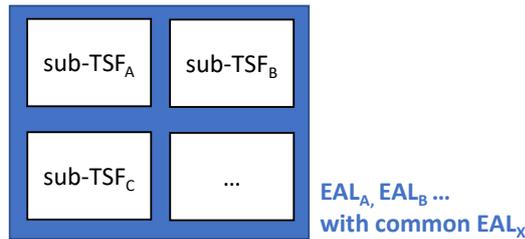
3938 The notions of composition and multi-assurance are aimed at solving different problems. In a nutshell,  
3939 composed and composite evaluations refer to evaluation processes which are particularly suitable for  
3940 multi-actor TOEs and allow reusing previous evaluation results, while multi-assurance refers to a  
3941 property of some TOEs in the context of a particular security problem and operational environment.

- 3942 - Evaluation by composition addresses TOEs with a supply and/or integration chain that may  
3943 involve multiple parties, each of which take care of the evaluation of the security functionality  
3944 they develop. ISO/IEC 15408 standardizes two approaches for the reuse of evaluation results in  
3945 an evaluation process:
  - 3946 ○ Composed evaluation allows to obtain a global assurance level (CAP) for a TOE from the  
3947 individual assurance levels of its interacting sub-TOEs.
  - 3948 ○ Composite evaluation allows to obtain a global assurance level for a layered TOE, in an  
3949 incremental way where the base layer is evaluated first, then the integrated dependent  
3950 and base layers are evaluated by reusing the evaluation results of the base layer.
- 3951 - Multi-assurance evaluation focuses on TOEs where different assurance needs apply to different  
3952 parts of the security functionality (the sub-TSFs) while ensuring a global assurance level for the  
3953 entire TOE. Before the introduction of multi-assurance, such needs would have forced a sponsor  
3954 to undergo several evaluations of the same TOE for different STs. By this concept, ISO/IEC  
3955 15408 standardizes and optimizes this process, and allows to determine the global assurance  
3956 level for the TOE, which cannot be obtained by using the single-assurance approach.

3957 From the point of view of the TOE/TSF, multi-assurance evaluation applies to any architecture, while  
3958 evaluation by composition applies to specific architectures: composed evaluation applies to a TOE that  
3959 consists in several interacting sub-TOEs, while composite evaluation applies to a TOE where a  
3960 dependent layer relies on a base layer.

3961 In practice, multi-assurance and evaluation by composition are not incompatible, and both approaches  
3962 can be used together in an evaluation.

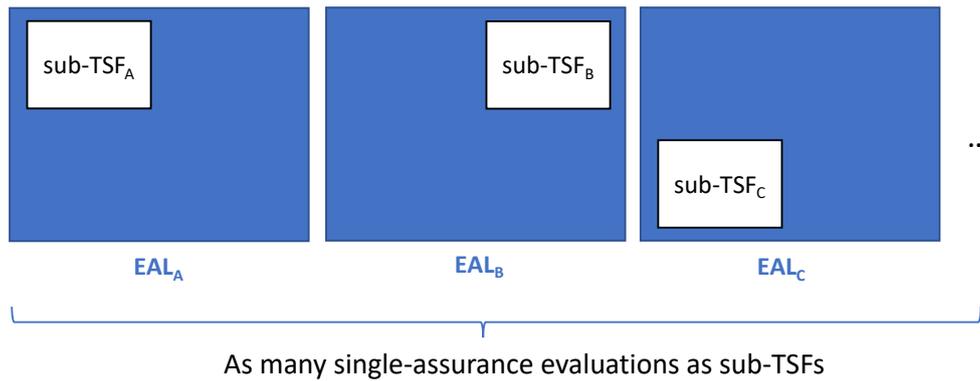
3963 The following figures show the relationship between composite, single-assurance and multi-assurance  
3964 evaluation approaches. The notation convention is the following: the TOE is blue, the TSF is white, and  
3965 grey indicates reuse.



Let  $EAL_x$  be included in  $EAL_A$ ,  $EAL_B$ , etc.

The way of achieving common  $EAL_x$  for the entire TOE, and  $EAL_A$ ,  $EAL_B$ , etc. for the specific sub-TSFs as shown in the figure is

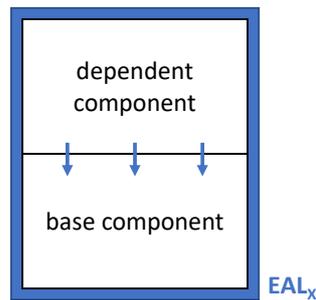
- either **by using the multi-assurance evaluation approach**, or
- by making several single-assurance evaluations as shown in the figure below



The converse does not hold. That is, any set of single-assurance evaluations of a TOE is not equivalent to a multi-assurance evaluation. This happens when two of the EALs are disjoint. Unlike single-assurance, multi-assurance evaluation allows to determine by construction the global assurance level of the TOE.

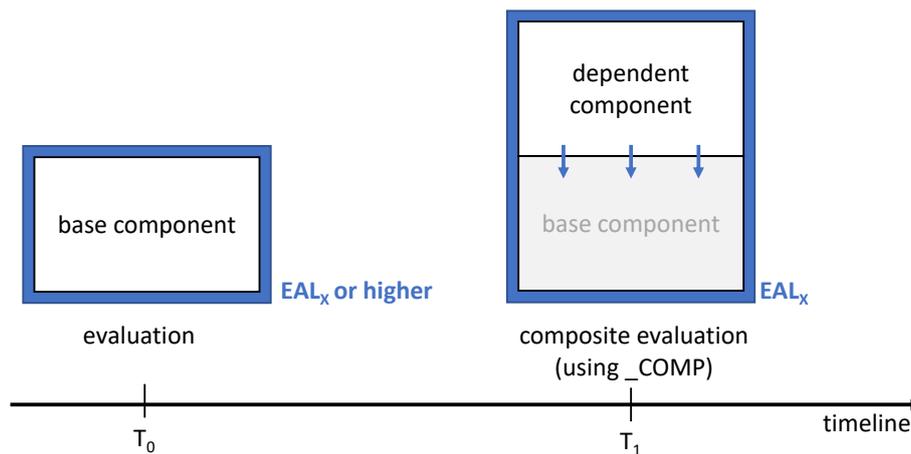
3966  
3967

**Figure 15 — Multi-assurance vs single-assurance evaluation**



There are two ways of achieving  $EAL_x$  for this TOE:

- either by applying the single-assurance evaluation model to the entire TOE/TSF, or
- **by using the composite evaluation approach** in two evaluation steps as shown in the figure below



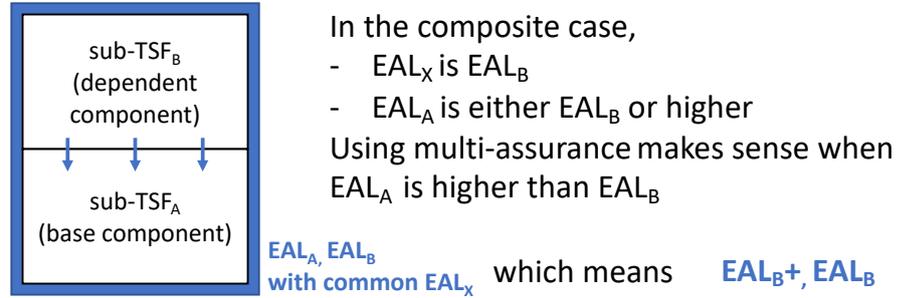
This allows to map the evaluation process to the development and integration life-cycle and to reuse the results of the base component evaluation in potentially many composite evaluations

3968

3969

**Figure 16 — Composite evaluation vs single-assurance evaluation**

What does it mean to apply the multi-assurance approach to a composite TOE?



That is, multi-assurance evaluation allows to associate the base and dependent sub-TSFs to their own assurance levels within one evaluation.

A combined approach consists in using `_COMP` as shown below:

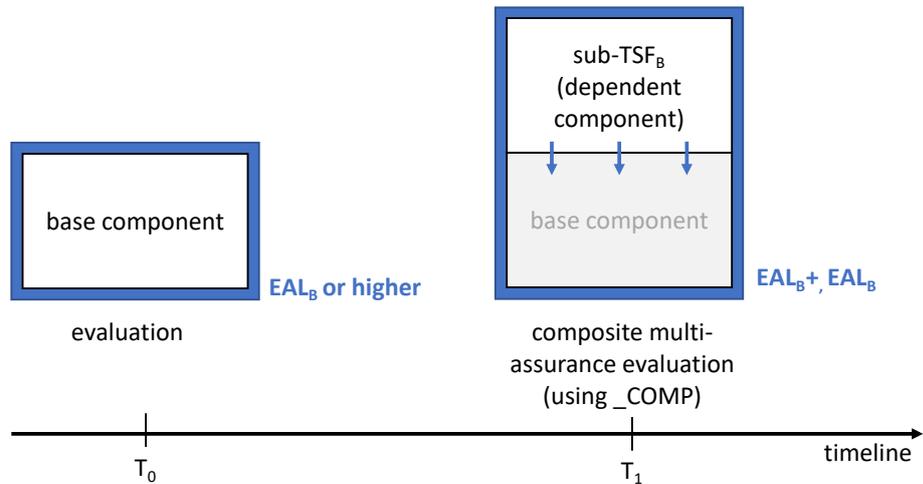


Figure 17 — Multi-assurance evaluation of a composite TOE

3970  
3971

3972  
3973  
3974

## Annex A (Normative) Specification of Packages

### 3975 **A.1 Goal and structure of this Annex**

3976 The goal of this annex is to give further information about the specification of packages.

3977 NOTE ISO/IEC 15408-3 does not define evaluation criteria for packages since packages are not separately  
3978 evaluated. Evaluation of packages is implicit once a package is incorporated into a PP, PP-Module or ST.

### 3979 **A.2 Package families**

#### 3980 **A.2.1 General**

3981 Figure A.1 shows the structure of a package family. Each part is discussed in the following subclauses.

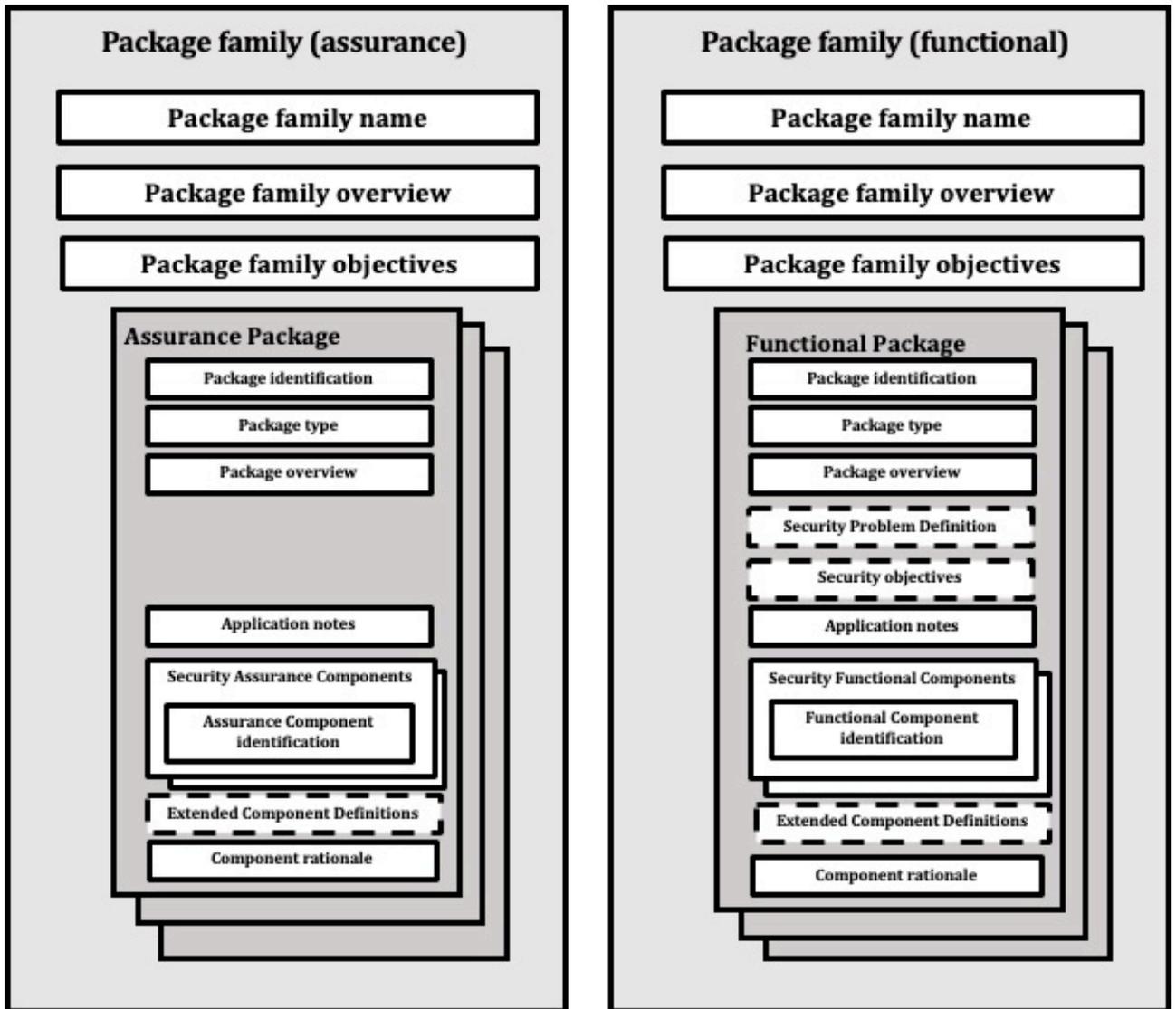


Figure A.1 — The structure of a package family with assurance or functional packages

3982 **A.2.2 Package family name**

3983 Packages with related objectives are presented as a family of packages. In this case, the package family  
3984 name is mandatory and the package family sponsor endeavors to allocate a unique name.

3985 **A.2.3 Package family overview**

3986 Packages presented as a family of packages contain a section giving an overview of the family,  
3987 describing the family at a high-level.

3988 **A.2.4 Package family objectives**

3989 The objectives section of the package family presents the intent of the family.

3990 **A.2.5 Packages**

3991 One or more packages, as described below are included in the package family. Packages of SARs and  
3992 packages of SFRs are not mixed in the same package family.

3993 **A.3 Packages**

3994 **A.3.1 Mandatory contents of a package**

3995 **A.3.1.1 Package identification**

3996 The package identification includes:

- 3997 a) the name of the package. The name provides a unique descriptive information about the intent  
3998 of the package;
- 3999 b) package version information;
- 4000 c) last updated date;
- 4001 d) sponsor;
- 4002 e) reference to the edition of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) that is used.

4003 The package **may** also be given a short name.

4004 EXAMPLE Evaluation Assurance Level 1 is also known as "EAL 1"

4005 NOTE For those packages defined in ISO/IEC 15408-5, items b) – e) are implicit in the edition information of  
4006 ISO/IEC 15408-5.

4007 **A.3.1.2 Package type**

4008 A package is identified as one of the following types:

- 4009 a) Functional package; or
- 4010 b) Assurance package.

4011 **A.3.1.3 Package overview**

4012 Packages contain a section giving a high-level overview and the intent of the package.

4013 **A.3.1.4 Application notes**

4014 Application notes are optional with the following exceptions:

- 4015 — For functional packages, any additional audit and management requirements relating to the  
4016 SFRs included in the package **shall** be specified in the Application notes section.
- 4017 — Functional packages **may** have dependencies on other functional packages. Such dependencies  
4018 **shall** be documented in the functional package and **may** also be documented in a PP, PP-Module  
4019 or ST.

4020 Functional packages may also specify components that have dependencies that are not satisfied by the  
4021 package, but are expected to be satisfied by another package, PP, PP-Module, or ST that uses the  
4022 package.

4023 EXAMPLE

4024 A package that contains the specification for a cryptographic protocol (e.g., TLS), where the higher-level SFR  
4025 components are specified in the package, but the cryptographic primitives are not.

4026 In this case an optional list of the dependent components **may** be provided in the application notes  
4027 section of the functional package, and **may** include further information such as any required  
4028 selections/assignments for those SFRs.

4029 NOTE Users of packages include authors of PPs, PP-Modules, other packages and STs, integrators, and evaluators.

#### 4030 **A.3.1.5 Components (either SFRs or SARs)**

4031 The security requirements included in the package are given. This section also provides the rationale  
4032 for the selection of the requirements.

4033 The security requirements **may** be selection-based. See 8.2.4.2. Optional security functional  
4034 requirements (and supporting SPD-elements and objectives, as required) are also allowed to be  
4035 specified in functional packages.

#### 4036 **A.3.1.6 Evaluation Methods/Activities**

4037 Evaluation method(s) and/or activities **shall** either be specified associated with the security  
4038 requirements in the package itself or in a separate supporting document.

### 4039 **A.3.2 Optional Contents of a Package**

#### 4040 **A.3.2.1 Security problem definition (Functional Packages)**

4041 Assurance packages do not contain this section.

4042 Functional packages **may** include this section.

4043 This section includes any SPD-elements which describe the security problem addressed by the  
4044 functional package. SPD-elements associated with optional SFRs may be defined in this section.  
4045 Application notes shall be used to identify the security objectives (if applicable) and SFRs to which the  
4046 optional SPD-elements are associated.

#### 4047 **A.3.2.2 Security objectives (Functional Packages)**

4048 Assurance packages **shall** not contain this section.

4049 Functional packages **may** include this section.

4050 In the case of a functional package used for Direct Rationale PPs/STs TOE security objectives **shall** not  
4051 be included.

4052 The security objectives section of a functional package presents any additional TOE security objectives  
4053 or security objectives for the operational environment derived from the SPD. Security objectives for the  
4054 TOE associated with optional SFRs may be defined in this section, if applicable. Application notes **shall**  
4055 be used to identify the SPD-elements and SFRs to which the optional security objectives are associated.

#### 4056 **A.3.2.3 Application notes**

4057 The inclusion of application notes in a package is optional. See A.3.1.4.

4058 The application notes section **may** also contain information of particular interest to users of the  
4059 package. The presentation is informal and covers, for example, warnings about limitations of use and  
4060 areas where specific attention is needed.

#### 4061 **A.3.2.4 Extended Components Definition(s)**

4062 A package **may** contain extended components. In this case, packages contain a section giving the  
4063 extended component definitions.

#### 4064 **A.3.2.5 Evaluation methods/activities**

4065 Packages **may** include evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC  
4066 18045. Evaluation methods and/or activities that are associated with the package shall be provided in

4067 the security requirement section with the relevant security requirement. Application notes, when  
4068 appropriate, should be associated with the specific requirements in the package. See Clause 9.  
4069 Evaluation methods and/or activities **may** be included in the package associated with the relevant  
4070 security requirements or provided in a separate document.

4071  
4072  
4073

## Annex B (Normative) Specification of Protection Profiles

### 4074 B.1 Goal and structure of this Annex

4075 The goal of this annex is to summarize the structure and expected content of a PP.

4076 NOTE 1 This annex does not define the requirements for evaluation of PPs. The PP evaluation criteria are found  
4077 in the APE class given in ISO/IEC 15408-3.

4078 NOTE 2 This annex does not give the requirements for the specification of PP-Configurations and PP-Modules.  
4079 These are found in Annex C.

4080 This annex consists of the following major parts:

- 4081 a) *The specification of a PP.* This is summarized in B.2. and includes  
4082 — *how to use a PP*  
4083 — *how not to use a PP*
- 4084 a) *What a PP must contain.* This is summarized in B.3 and is described in more detail in B.3.2 to  
4085 B.3.8. *These subclauses describe the mandatory contents of the PP, the interrelationships*  
4086 *between these contents, and provide examples.*
- 4087 b) *Claiming conformance with standards.* B.4 describes how a PP author can claim that the TOE is to  
4088 *meet a particular standard.*
- 4089 c) *Direct Rationale PPs.* Direct Rationale PPs are PPs in which the threats and organizational  
4090 *security policies in the SPD are mapped directly to the SFRs and possibly to security objectives*  
4091 *for the operational environment. They are described in detail in B.5.*

### 4092 B.2 Specification of a PP

#### 4093 B.2.1 Using a PP

##### 4094 B.2.1.1 How to use a PP

4095 A PP is typically a statement of need where a user community, a regulatory entity, or a group of  
4096 developers define a common set of security needs. A PP gives consumers a means of referring to this set  
4097 and facilitates future evaluation against these needs.

4098 A PP is therefore typically used as:

- 4099 — part of a requirement specification for a specific consumer or group of consumers, who will only  
4100 consider buying a specific type of IT product if it meets the PP;
- 4101 — part of a regulation from a specific regulatory entity, who will only allow a specific type of IT  
4102 product to be used if it meets the PP;
- 4103 — to address a common security problem presented by a variety of consumers, and often defined  
4104 by a group including several IT product developers, who then produce IT products of this type  
4105 in order to meet the needs of their common market.

4106 although this does not preclude other uses.

##### 4107 B.2.1.2 How not to use a PP

4108 Two roles, among many, that a PP **does not** fulfil are:

- 4109 — a complete specification: A PP is designed to be a security specification and not a general  
4110 specification. Unless security-relevant, properties such as interoperability, physical size, and  
4111 weight, required voltage etc. **should not** be part of a PP. This means that in general a PP is a part  
4112 of a complete specification, but not a complete specification itself.

4113 — a specification of a single product: Unlike a ST, a PP is designed to describe a certain type of IT  
 4114 product, and not a single product. When only a single product is described, it is better to use a  
 4115 ST for this purpose.

## 4116 B.3 Mandatory Contents of a PP

### 4117 B.3.1 General

4118 There are two types of PP. Firstly the “regular” PP which is a PP that contains the full contents as  
 4119 described in in B.3.2 to B.3.8. Secondly, in some cases a PP author **can** write a Direct Rationale PP which  
 4120 has different contents compared to PPs that contain security objectives for the TOE. Direct Rationale  
 4121 PPs, and the reasons and circumstances in which they are used are described in detail in B.5. All other  
 4122 parts of this Annex assume a PP with full contents.

4123 Figure B.1 shows the content for a PP that is given in ISO/IEC 15408-3. Figure B.1 **may** also be used as a  
 4124 structural outline of the PP, though alternative structures are allowed. For instance, if the security  
 4125 requirements rationale is particularly bulky, it could be included in an appendix of the PP instead of in  
 4126 the security requirements section. The separate sections of a PP and the contents of those sections are  
 4127 briefly summarized below and explained in much more detail in B.3.2 to B.3.8.

4128 A PP contains:

4129 a) a *PP introduction* containing the PP reference and a narrative description of the TOE type;

4130 b) *conformance claims*, showing

4131 — which edition of ISO/IEC 15408-1 is applicable;

4132 — if ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 have been extended;

4133 — whether the PP claims conformance to any other PPs and/or packages, and if so, to which  
 4134 ones and the type of conformance claimed.

4135 — reference to any evaluation method(s) and/or activities that have been derived from  
 4136 ISO/IEC 18045.

4137 NOTE 1 Any evaluation methods and/or activities may optionally be included in the PP, or in an  
 4138 associated supporting document.

4139 — In the case of exact conformance, the allowed-with statement appears in this section of the  
 4140 PP.

4141 — The type of conformance demanded of STs and other PPs derived from it;

4142 NOTE 2 PP-Modules inherit the type of conformance demanded by the PP in its conformance  
 4143 statement when the PP is used by the PP-Module as a base PP;

4144 c) a *security problem definition*, showing threats, OSPs and assumptions;

4145 d) *security objectives*, showing how the solution to the security problem is divided between  
 4146 security objectives for the operational environment and optionally security objectives for the  
 4147 TOE;

4148 e) *extended components definition*, where new components (i.e. those not included in ISO/IEC  
 4149 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3) **may** be defined. These new components are needed to define  
 4150 extended functional and extended assurance requirements;

4151 f) *security requirements*, where a translation of the security objectives for the TOE into a  
 4152 standardized language is provided. This standardized language is in the form of SFRs.  
 4153 Additionally, this section of a PP defines the SARs;

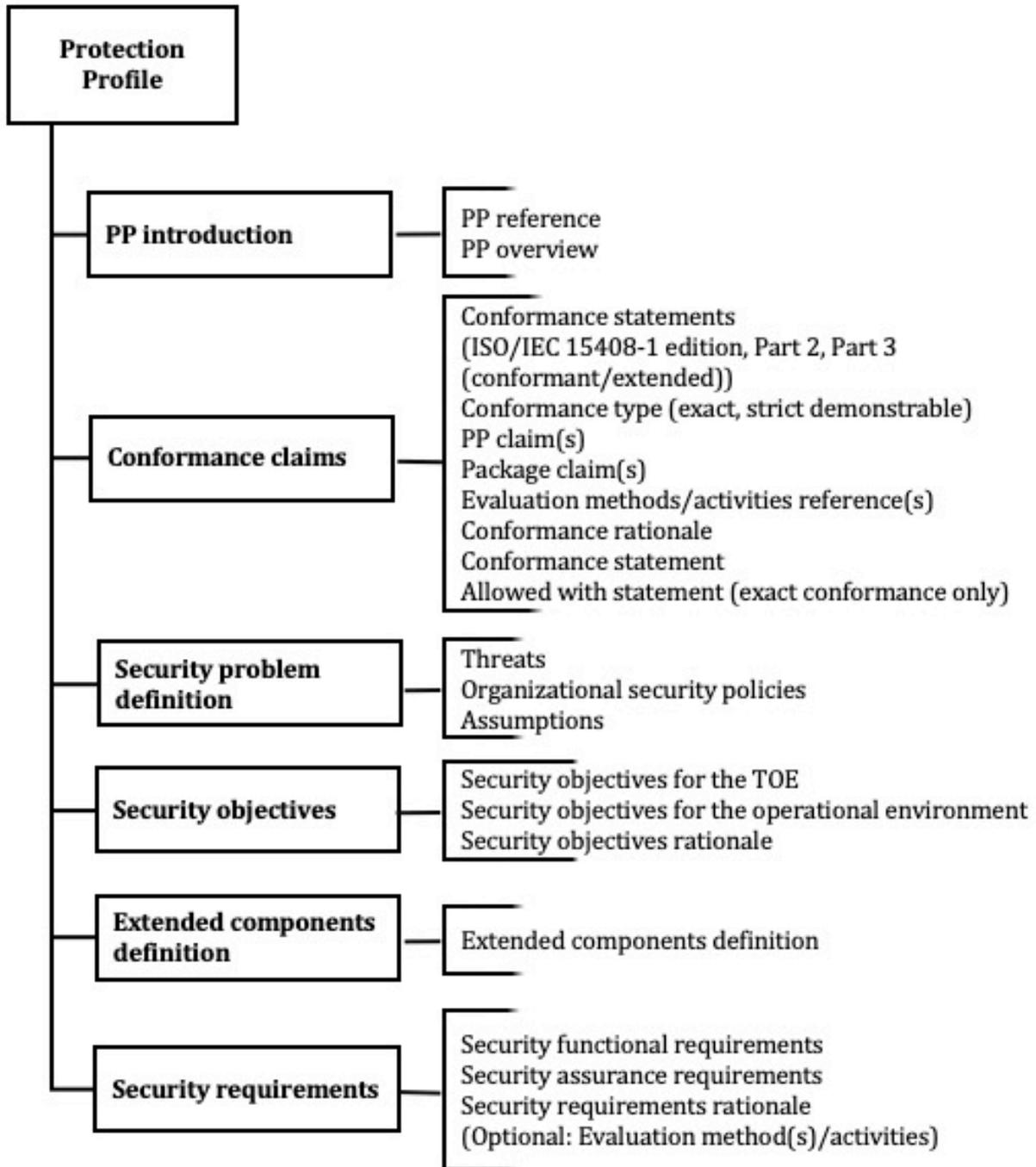


Figure B.1 — Contents of a Protection Profile

4154

4155 **B.3.2 PP introduction (APE\_INT)**

4156 **B.3.2.1 General**

4157 The PP introduction describes the TOE in a narrative way on two levels of abstraction:

- 4158 a) the PP reference, which provides identification material for the PP;
- 4159 b) the TOE overview, which briefly describes the TOE.

4160 **B.3.2.2 PP reference**

4161 A PP contains a clear PP reference that identifies that particular PP. A typical PP reference consists of  
4162 title, version, sponsors, and publication date.

4163 NOTE Here a distinction is made between the sponsor of a PP, i.e. the entity responsible for its development,  
4164 and the author of a PP which is the entity responsible for its production.

## 4165 EXAMPLE

4166 An example of a PP reference is “Atlantean Navy CablePhone Encryptor PP, version 2b, Atlantean Navy  
4167 Procurement Office, April 1, 2020”.

4168 The reference **should** be unique so that it is possible to tell different PPs and different versions of the  
4169 same PP apart. The PP reference facilitates indexing and referencing the PP and its inclusion in PP  
4170 catalogues.

4171 **B.3.2.3 PP overview**4172 **B.3.2.3.1 General**

4173 The PP overview is aimed at potential consumers of a TOE type who are looking through catalogues of  
4174 PPs that **can** support the specification of their security needs.

4175 The PP overview is also aimed at developers who **can** use the PP in designing TOEs or in adapting  
4176 existing products.

4177 The typical length of a PP overview is several paragraphs.

4178 To this end, the PP overview briefly describes the usage of the TOE and its major security features,  
4179 identifies the TOE type, and identifies any major non-TOE hardware/software/firmware available to  
4180 the TOE.

4181 **B.3.2.3.2 Usage and major security features of a TOE type**

4182 The description of the usage and major security features of the TOE type is intended to give a very  
4183 general idea of what the TOE **is** capable of, and what it **can** be used for. This section is written for PP  
4184 authors, TOE developers, or potential TOE consumers, describing TOE type usage and major security  
4185 features in terms of business operations, using language that TOE consumers can understand.

## 4186 EXAMPLE

4187 An example of this is “The Atlantean Navy CablePhone Encryptor is an encryption device that allows confidential  
4188 communication between ships across the Atlantean Navy CablePhone system. To this end it allows at least 1024  
4189 different users and support at least 500 Mbps encryption speed. It allows both bilateral communication between  
4190 ships and broadcast across the entire network.”

4191 **B.3.2.3.3 TOE Type**

4192 The TOE overview identifies the general type of a TOE addressed by the PP, such as: firewall, VPN-  
4193 firewall, smart card, crypto-modem, intranet, web server, database, web server, mobile device, and  
4194 database, etc. The TOE type definition often includes a characterization of the TOE software and  
4195 hardware boundaries.

## 4196 EXAMPLE

4197 This example of TOE type description is drawn from the Security IC Protection Profile: “The Target of Evaluation  
4198 (TOE) is a security integrated circuit (security IC) which is composed of a processing unit, security components,  
4199 I/O ports (contact, contactless, or similar interfaces like USB, MMC) and volatile and non-volatile memories  
4200 (hardware). The TOE may also include IC Developer/Manufacturer proprietary IC Dedicated Software as long as it  
4201 is delivered by the IC Manufacturer. (...) All other software running on the Security IC is called Security IC  
4202 Embedded Software and is not part of the TOE.”

4203 **B.3.2.3.4 Available non-TOE hardware/software/firmware**

4204 While some TOEs do not rely upon other IT, many TOEs, notably software TOEs, rely on additional, non-  
4205 TOE, hardware, software and/or firmware. In the latter case, the PP overview is required to identify the  
4206 non-TOE hardware/software/firmware.

4207 As a PP is not written for a specific product, in many cases only a general idea can be given of the  
4208 available hardware/software/firmware. In some other cases, more specific information can be  
4209 provided.

4210 EXAMPLE 1

4211 An example where more specific information is provided would be a requirements specification for a specific  
4212 consumer where the platform is already known.

4213 EXAMPLE 2

4214 Examples of hardware/software/firmware identifications include:

- 4215 — None (for a completely stand-alone TOE);
- 4216 — a standard PC with a dual core 2.10 GHz or faster processor and 4GB or more RAM, running the Yaiza  
4217 operating system for professionals, version 53.0 Update 6b, c, or 7, or version 54.0;
- 4218 — a standard 64-bit server with a 2xQuad-Core core processor and 16GB or more RAM, running the Yaiza  
4219 operating system, server edition version 7.0 Update 6d, and the WonderMagic 12.0 Graphics card with  
4220 the 1.01 WM Driver Set;
- 4221 — a CleverCard SB17067 integrated circuit;
- 4222 — a CleverCard SB17067 integrated circuit running v12.0 of the QuickOS smart card operating system;
- 4223 — Yaiza mobile-OS 3.1.6 on smartphone and tablet devices using the FP9 processor.

4224 **B.3.3 Conformance claims and conformance statement (APE\_CCL)**

4225 **B.3.3.1 General**

4226 This section of a PP describes how the PP:

- 4227 — States the applicable edition of ISO/IEC 15408-1;
- 4228 — Conforms with ISO/IEC 15408-2 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 (i.e. conformant or extended);
- 4229 — Claims other PPs (if any);
- 4230 — Claims Packages (if any);
- 4231 — References to evaluation method(s) and/or activities derived from ISO/IEC 18405 (if any);
- 4232 — Is allowed to be used in conjunction with other PPs and PP-Modules in PP-Configuration  
4233 (required in the exact conformance case only).

4234 The description of how the PP conforms to ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) consists of two items: the edition  
4235 of ISO/IEC 15408-1 that is used and whether the PP contains extended security requirements or not  
4236 (see 10.2 and D.3.6).

4237 The description of conformance claimed by the PP to other PPs means that the PP lists any other PPs to  
4238 which conformance is being claimed to. The type of conformance being claimed is also identified. For an  
4239 explanation of this, see 10.2.

4240 The description of conformance of the PP to packages means that the PP lists the packages to which  
4241 conformance is being claimed. For an explanation of this, see 10.2.

4242 The references to the evaluation methods and/or activities means that the PP provides references to  
4243 the evaluation method(s) and/or activities to be used during an evaluation based on a ST claiming  
4244 conformance to the PP. These evaluation methods and activities may be included directly in the PP or  
4245 may be found in a referenced supporting document. It is not necessary to reproduce the text of these  
4246 evaluation methods and activities in the PP. See 10.2.

4247 If evaluation method(s) and/or activities are included in the PP then the Conformance Statement shall  
4248 also include a statement in the following form:

4249 **“This PP requires the use of evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities defined in**  
4250 **<reference(s)>.”**

4251 Where <reference> is replaced by identification of the location of the evaluation methods and  
4252 evaluation activities applicable to the PP.

4253 NOTE 1 As outlined in clause 0, Evaluation Schemes may not approve the use of particular EMs/EAs.

4254 The conformance type in the PP states how STs and/or other PPs **shall** conform to that PP. The PP  
4255 author selects whether “exact”, “strict” or “demonstrable” conformance is required.

4256 NOTE 2 See C.2.2.5 for the use of conformance claims in PP modules.

4257 NOTE 3 See B.5.2 for the use of conformance claims in Direct Rationale PPs.

### 4258 **B.3.3.2 Exact conformance**

4259 If exact conformance is selected, the PP author **shall**, where applicable, specify the following  
4260 information in the allowed-with statement in the conformance claims section of the PP:

4261 — Other PPs that **may** be used, either by a ST based on this PP, or used in a PP-Configuration, with  
4262 this PP;

4263 — PP-Modules that **may** specify this PP as one of the PP-Module’s base PPs.

4264 NOTE 1 If neither of the above options is exercised, then a ST can claim exact conformance to only the PP by  
4265 itself.

4266 NOTE 2 A PP cannot claim exact conformance to another PP.

### 4267 **B.3.4 Security problem definition (APE\_SPD)**

4268 See 7.1 for information and requirements for the SPD. Including threats, assumptions and  
4269 organizational security policies (OSPs).

### 4270 **B.3.5 Security objectives (APE\_OBJ)**

4271 See 7.2 for information and requirements for the security objectives including security objectives for  
4272 the TOE and security objectives for the operational environment.

4273 NOTE In the case of Direct Rationale, security objectives for the TOE are not included.

### 4274 **B.3.6 Extended components definition (APE\_ECD)**

4275 In many cases the security requirements in a PP are based on components given in ISO/IEC 15408-2 or  
4276 ISO/IEC 15408-3, see B.3.7. However, in some cases, there may be requirements in a PP that are not  
4277 based on components in ISO/IEC 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3. In these cases, new components, i.e.  
4278 extended components, shall be defined, and the definition provided in the Extended Components  
4279 Definition section. For more information on this, see 8.4.

4280 NOTE This section is intended to contain only the extended components and not the extended requirements  
4281 which are based on the extended components. The extended requirements are included in the security  
4282 requirements section as described in B.3.7 and are then for all purposes treated identically to the requirements  
4283 that are based on components given in ISO/IEC 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3.

### 4284 **B.3.7 Security requirements (APE\_REQ)**

#### 4285 **B.3.7.1 General**

4286 The security requirements consist of two groups of requirements:

- 4287 a) *the security functional requirements* (SFRs): a translation of the security objectives for the TOE  
4288 into a standardized language;
- 4289 b) *the security assurance requirements* (SARs): a description of how assurance is to be gained that  
4290 the TOE meets the SFRs.

4291 These two groups are discussed in 7.3.

#### 4292 **B.3.7.2 Including requirements in a PP**

4293 For a PP with strict conformance to another PP all the requirements in this PP **shall** be included, and  
4294 additional requirements **may** be included in the conformant PP.

4295 For a PP with demonstrable conformance to another PP all requirements in this PP shall be included, or  
4296 a rationale explaining how they are otherwise met shall be provided in the conformant PP.

4297 The following types of discretionary requirement may be included in PPs in all (exact, strict and  
4298 demonstrable) conformance types:

4299 If a PP contains optional requirements, a conformant PP may instantiate these requirements, being  
4300 sure to include any required SPD-elements associated with those requirements. This may be done  
4301 regardless of the conformance required by the PP. Omitting optional SFRs does not constitute “partial  
4302 conformance” to a PP, and thus is allowed.

### 4303 B.3.8 TOE summary specification (TSS)

4304 Unlike a ST, a PP has no TOE summary specification.

## 4305 B.4 Referring to other standards in a PP

4306 In some cases, a PP author needs to refer to an external standard, such as a particular cryptographic  
4307 standard or protocol. ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) allows three ways of doing this:

4308 a) As an organizational security policy (or part of it).

4309 EXAMPLE 1

4310 There exists a government standard defining how passwords have to be chosen, this may be stated as an  
4311 organizational security policy in a PP. This may lead to an objective for the environment (e. g. if users of  
4312 the TOE need to choose passwords accordingly), or it may lead to security objectives for the TOE and then  
4313 to appropriate SFRs (likely of the FIA class), if the TOE generates passwords. In both cases the rationale of  
4314 the PP author needs to make plausible that the security objectives for the TOE and the SFRs are suitable  
4315 to fulfil the OSP. The evaluator will examine if this is in fact plausible (and may decide to look into the  
4316 standard for this), if the OSP is implemented by SFRs, as explained below.

4317 b) As a technical standard used in a refinement of a component or security requirement.

4318 EXAMPLE 2

4319 **FCS\_CKM.1.1 Refinement:** The [selection: **TSF, TOE platform**] shall generate asymmetric cryptographic  
4320 keys in accordance with a specified cryptographic key generation algorithm

4321 [selection:

4322 — RSA schemes using cryptographic key sizes of 2048-bit or greater that meet the following:

4323 [selection:

4324 — **FIPS PUB 186-4, “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix B.3;**

4325 — **ANSI X9.31-1998, Section 4.1];**

4326 — ECC schemes using “NIST curves” P-256, P-384 and [selection: P-521, no other curves] that meet the  
4327 following: FIPS PUB 186-4, “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix B.4;

4328 — FFC schemes using cryptographic key sizes of 2048-bit or greater that meet the following: FIPS PUB  
4329 186-4, “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix B.1

4330 ].

4331 If reference to only a certain part of a standard is desired, that part shall be unambiguously  
4332 stated in the SFR refinement.

4333 NOTE 1 The PP author is reminded that referring to a standard in SFRs can impose a significant burden on a  
4334 developer developing a TOE that meets the PP (depending on the size and complexity of the standard and the  
4335 assurance required), and that it can be more suitable to require alternative (non-CC related) ways to assess  
4336 conformance to that standard.

4337 **B.5 Direct Rationale PPs**

4338 **B.5.1 General**

4339 Writing a PP includes consideration of the STs that will be written with the PP as a basis. As noted in  
4340 D.4, in some cases it is desired to write a PP that supports the specification of Direct Rationale STs.

4341 The intention of the Direct Rationale PP is to minimize the level of indirection between the SPD, any  
4342 security objectives for the operational environment, and the SFRs.

4343 In some situations, it is appropriate to omit the definition of the TOE security objectives. In this case the  
4344 SFRs enhanced with natural language descriptions and the objectives for the environment directly map  
4345 the SPD.

4346 A Direct Rationale PP consists of:

- 4347 a) a PP introduction, consisting of a PP reference and a TOE overview;
- 4348 b) the conformance claim;
- 4349 c) security objectives for the operational environment;
- 4350 d) the SFRs and the SARs (including the extended components definition) and the security  
4351 requirements rationale (only if the dependencies are not satisfied).

4352 The content of a Direct Rationale PP is shown in .

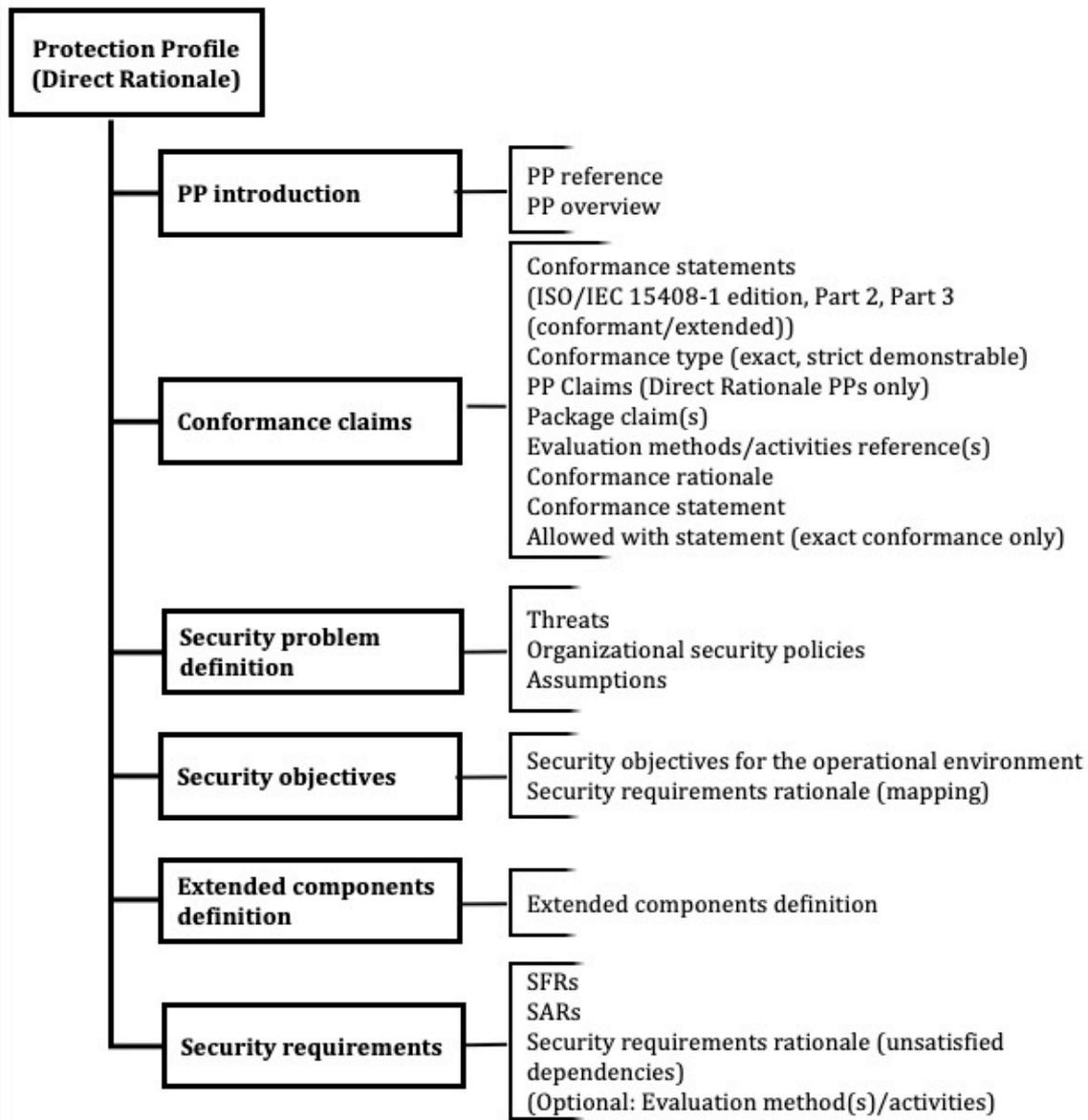


Figure B.2 — Contents of a Direct Rational PP

4353

4354 **B.5.2 Conformance claims (APE\_CCL) for Direct Rationale PPs**

4355 A Direct Rationale PP **shall** only claim conformance to another Direct Rationale PP.

4356 A regular PP **may** claim conformance with a Direct Rationale PP.

4357 **B.5.3 Security Problem Definition (APE\_SPD) for Direct Rationale PPs**

4358 A Direct Rationale PP has the following differences when compared to a PP that contains security  
4359 objectives for the TOE:

- 4360 — security objectives for the TOE are not included. The security objectives for the operational  
4361 environment **shall** still be described;
- 4362 — a security objectives rationale is not included as there are no TOE security objectives in the PP;
- 4363 — a Security Requirements rationale that directly maps the SFRs and any security objectives for  
4364 the operational environment to the SPD-elements is included. It is recommended that this part  
4365 of the security requirements rationale is located directly under each of the threats, OSPs and  
4366 assumptions in the SPD section. As in regular PPs, the security requirements rationale also  
4367 needs to justify any SFR dependencies that are not satisfied; this part of the rationale is typically  
4368 located after the definition of the SFRs.
- 4369 — there is a requirement to provide a natural language description of the SFRs and their  
4370 relationship to security functionality in terms of the architecture that is visible (observable) to  
4371 Administrators and other users, or in terms of internal features or properties.

4372 **EXAMPLE**

4373 The following are examples of internal features:

- 4374 — Unavailability of residual data upon reallocation of a resource;
- 4375 — Hidden failure conditions of login/password-authentication;
- 4376 — Hidden biometric comparison score.

4377 **B.6 Optional Contents of a PP**

4378 PPs **may** include evaluation methods and/or activities that are derived from ISO/IEC 18405. Evaluation  
4379 methods and/or activities that are associated with the PP are referenced in the conformance claims  
4380 section of the PP. See subclause 10.2.

4381 If the PP author decides to include any evaluation method(s) and/or activities in the PP then they shall  
4382 be provided in the security requirements section with the relevant security requirement. Application  
4383 notes, when appropriate, should be associated with the specific requirements.

**Annex C  
(Normative)**

**Specification of PP-Modules and PP-Configurations**

**C.1 Goal and structure of this Annex**

The goal of this annex is to summarize the structure and expected content of PP-Modules and PP-Configurations.

NOTE 1 This annex does not define the requirements for evaluation of PP-Configurations. The PP-Configuration evaluation criteria are found in the ACE class given in ISO/IEC 15408-3.

**C.2 Specification of PP-Modules**

**C.2.1 Using a PP-Module**

A PP-Module is a security statement of a group of users or developers, regulators, administration, or any other entity that meets specific consumer needs. A PP-Module complements one or more PPs and optionally other PP-Modules, which are called collectively base PPs/PP-Modules, and allows consumers to refer to this statement, facilitates the evaluation against it and the comparison of conformant evaluated TOEs. A PP-Module can only be used within a PP-Configuration that includes those base PPs/PP-Modules.

NOTE A base PP is a PP that is required by a PP-Module. A base PP-Module is a PP-Module that is required by another PP-Module.

**C.2.2 Mandatory Contents of a PP-Module**

**C.2.2.1 General**

Figure C.1 shows the content of a PP-Module.

The content of a PP-Module is summarized below and explained in detail in C.2.2.2 to C.2.4. A PP-Module contains:

- an *Introduction* which identifies the PP-Module, identifies the base PPs/PP-Modules which it is based on and provides a description of the TOE within its environment that meets the descriptions underlying the base PPs/PP-Modules,
- a *Consistency rationale* that states the correspondence between the PP-Module and its base PPs/PP-Modules,
- a *Conformance claim* regarding the edition of ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts), the conformance statement and for the case of exact conformance the allowed-with statements,
- a *Security problem definition* with threats, assumptions, and organizational security policies,
- a *Security objectives section* presenting the solution to the security problem in terms of objectives for the TOE and its operational environment,
- an optional *Extended functional components* definition where new functional components not included in ISO/IEC 15408-2 are introduced,
- a *Security functional requirements* section with a standardized statement of the TOE security objectives,

4425 — A *Security assurance requirements* section, except in the exact conformance where the SARs are  
4426 inherited from the base PPs.

### 4427 C.2.2.2 PP-Module introduction

#### 4428 C.2.2.2.1 PP-Module reference

4429 The PP-Module introduction provides a clear and unambiguous reference that allows identifying the  
4430 PP-Module. A typical reference is made of the title of the PP-Module and the version of the document,  
4431 the sponsors, and the publication date.

4432 The PP-Module reference can be used to index the document in PP catalogues.

#### 4433 C.2.2.2.2 Identification of base PPs/PP-Modules

4434 The PP-Module introduction identifies its base PPs/PP-Modules. The identification consists of a list of  
4435 references.

4436 A PP-Module that requires to be used with a set of base PPs/PP-Modules simultaneously, say  $\{B_1 \dots, B_n\}$ ,  
4437 will provide an identification list of the following shape:

4438 
$$B_1 \dots AND \dots B_n \text{ with } n \geq 1$$

4439 This set of PPs/PP-Modules must be closed, that is, for any PP-Module  $B_i$ , its own base PPs/PP-Modules  
4440 must belong to the set  $\{B_1 \dots B_n\}$ .

4441 NOTE 1 This means that the set  $\{B_1 \dots, B_n\}$  either does not contain any PP-Module or that it contains at least one  
4442 PP-Module which requires base PPs only but no other PP-Module.

4443 A PP-Module *may* also allow alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules, say  $\{S_1 \dots S_k\}$ ; in this case, the  
4444 identification list states:

4445 
$$S_1 \dots OR \dots S_k \text{ with } k \geq 1$$

4446 The unfolded form of the identification of alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules is then:

4447 
$$(B_1 \dots AND \dots B_{n1}) \dots OR \dots (B_1 \dots AND \dots B_{nk}) \text{ with } k \geq 1 \text{ and } n_i \geq 1$$

4448 NOTE 1 A PP-Module that states an OR-ed list *is* equivalent to as many PP-Modules as elements  $S_i$  in the list. That  
4449 is, an OR-ed list is a shortcut to avoid defining and maintaining similar PP-Modules for different usages.

#### 4450 C.2.2.2.3 TOE overview

4451 The TOE overview of a PP-Module *may* complete the TOE overviews of the base PPs/PP-Modules,  
4452 provided consistency between the PP-Module and its base PPs/PP-Modules is ensured:

4453 — The TOE type of the PP-Module *may either* be the same as that of the base PPs/PP-Modules or  
4454 *may* introduce specificities required to meet the purpose of the PP-Module.

4455 — The PP-Module *may* introduce further usage and major security features in addition to those  
4456 stated in the base PPs/PP-Modules.

4457 — The PP-Module *can* specify particular non-TOE hardware, software and/or firmware compliant  
4458 with the statement in the base PPs/PP-Modules.

4459 In a PP-Module, the possibility of supplementing the TOE overview of the base PPs/PP-Modules has the  
4460 same meaning as in a PP or ST that supplements the TOE overview of another PP to which they claim  
4461 conformance.

4462 The statement of the TOE overview in a PP-Module may be given by reference when it is the same as in  
4463 its base PPs/PP-Modules, i.e. when there is no addition. The PP-Module *may* provide as many specific  
4464 TOE overviews as alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules.

#### 4465 C.2.2.3 Consistency rationale

4466 The PP-Module has to provide a consistency rationale with respect to its base PPs/PP-Modules.

4467 If the PP-Module specifies alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules, the PP-Module *shall* provide as  
4468 many consistency rationales as the number of alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules.

4469 The consistency analysis **shall** be performed on the TOE type, the SPD, the objectives, and the security  
4470 functional requirements. At the end, the goal is to demonstrate that a TOE can meet the TOE type  
4471 descriptions provided in the base PP(s)/PP-Module(s) and in the PP-Module and satisfy all the security  
4472 functional requirements specified in the PP-Module and its base PPs/PP-Modules The consistency  
4473 rationale **shall** demonstrate that the unions of SPDs, objectives, and security functional requirements  
4474 defined in the PP-Module and in its base PPs/PP-Modules do not lead to a contradiction.

4475 The consistency rationale **may** use correspondence tables between SPD/objectives/SFRs together with  
4476 textual justifications.

4477 NOTE The consistency of the SFRs implies the consistency of the union of objectives and the union of SPDs  
4478 provided that the PP-Module does not change the assumptions and objectives for the environment of the base  
4479 PPs/PP-Modules.

#### 4480 C.2.2.4 Assurance rationale

4481 A PP-Module of demonstrable or strict conformance type has to provide an assurance rationale.

4482 The assurance rationale shall demonstrate the consistency of the applicable set of SARs (which may be  
4483 inherited from its base PPs) with the SPD defined in the PP-Module. That is, that the assurance  
4484 requirements and the threat model are not contradictory.

4485 If the PP-Module does not inherit its set of SARs from its base PPs, then the assurance rationale shall  
4486 demonstrate that the assurance requirements in the PP-Module and in its base PPs/PP-Modules are not  
4487 contradictory with regard to the assets that are common to the PP-Module and its base PPs/PP-  
4488 Modules.

#### 4489 C.2.2.5 Conformance claims and conformance statement

##### 4490 C.2.2.5.1 General

4491 This section of a PP-Module **shall** be included for all PP-Modules and describes how the PP-Module  
4492 conforms to:

- 4493 — ISO/IEC 15408-2, ISO/IEC 15408-3, their editions, and any use of extended security  
4494 requirements
- 4495 — functional and assurance packages.

4496 A PP-Module **shall not** claim conformance to any PP, other PP-Module, or PP-Configuration.

4497 The PP-Module conformance statement identifies the required conformance type. Exact conformance is  
4498 inherited from the base PPs and require that all the base PPs/PP-Modules are of exact conformance as  
4499 well. The PP-Module conformance statement may also identify any evaluation methods and/or  
4500 activities that are required to be used with it.

4501 If evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from ISO/IEC 18045 are included in the  
4502 PP-Module then the Conformance Statement may also include a statement in the following form:

4503 **“This PP-Module requires the use of evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities defined in  
4504 <reference>.”**

4505 Where <reference> is replaced by identification of the location of the evaluation methods and  
4506 evaluation activities applicable to the PP-Module.

4507 NOTE 1 Evaluation methods and/or evaluation activities can either be included in the PP-Module itself or  
4508 included by reference to one or more separate documents describing them.

##### 4509 C.2.2.5.2 Exact conformance

4510 In the case of exact conformance, the allowed-with statement also includes an identification of PPs and  
4511 PP-Modules other than the PP-Module’s set of base PPs/PP-Modules, that are allowed to be used in PP-  
4512 Configurations with that PP-Module.

4513 NOTE 1 All components in a PP-Configuration that requires exact conformance **must** also require exact  
4514 conformance in their conformance statements.

4515 NOTE 2 This maintains the exact conformance concept that the PP-Module authors have control over which  
 4516 other requirements **can be** specified in combination with the requirements specified in their PP-Module.

4517 Figure C.2 shows how conformance claims and statements are inherited in the case of exact conformance.

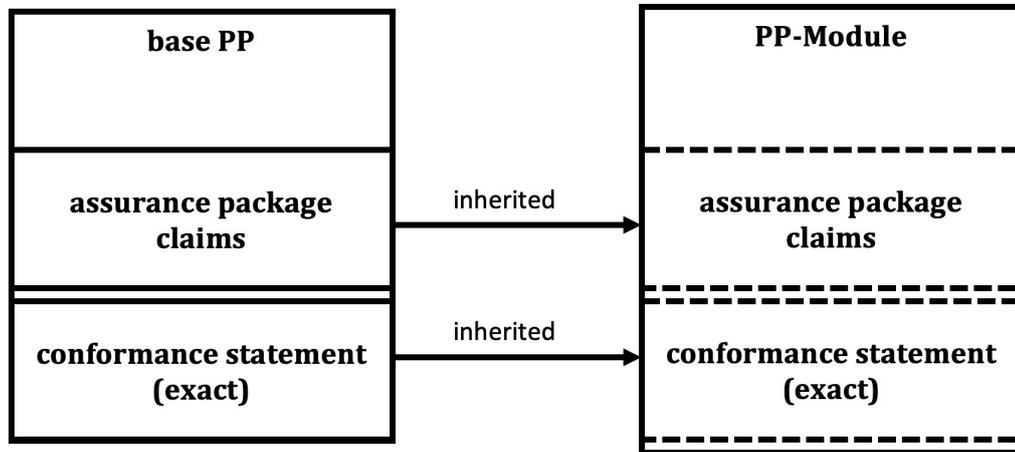


Figure C.2 — Inherited conformance claims and statement for exact conformance case

4518

#### 4519 C.2.2.6 Security problem definition

4520 This section defines the security problem addressed by the PP-Module. It can contain all types of SPD-  
 4521 elements, i.e. assumptions, threats, and organizational security policies.

4522 A PP-Module defines the security problem in relationship with the security problem of the base PPs/PP-  
 4523 Modules and the definition of the TOE and its environment provided in the PP-Module's Introduction.

4524 Each SPD-element **could** either come from a base PP/PP-Module or be entirely new. Let "E" be an SPD-  
 4525 element of the PP-Module, one of the following cases holds:

- 4526 — "E" belongs to an identified base PP/PP-Module; a reference to the SPD-element is sufficient,
- 4527 — "E" is a refinement of an SPD-element of a base PP/PP-Module,
- 4528 — "E" is a new SPD-element, related to additional features of the TOE or its environment.

4529 NOTE 1 The refined SPD-elements can be dealt with as new SPD-elements without any impact on the meaning  
 4530 of the SPD.

4531 NOTE 2 In the same way that STs can, a PP-Module can introduce assumptions provided they cover aspects  
 4532 that are outside the scope of the base PPs/PP-Modules.

#### 4533 C.2.2.7 Security objectives

4534 This section defines the security objectives for the TOE and for the TOE's operational environment.

4535 A PP-Module defines new security objectives in context with the security objectives of the base PPs/PP-  
 4536 Modules.

4537 Each Security Objective **may** either come from a base PP/PP-Module or be entirely new. Let "O" be an  
 4538 objective of the PP-Module, one of the following cases holds:

- 4539 — "O" belongs to an identified base PP/PP-Module; a reference to the Security Objective is  
 4540 sufficient.
- 4541 — "O" is a refinement of a security objective of a base PP/PP-Module,
- 4542 — "O" is a new objective introduced by the PP-Module.

4543 NOTE The refined objectives can be dealt with as new objectives without any impact on the meaning of the  
 4544 whole set of objectives.

4545 A PP-Module **may** introduce new objectives for the TOE operational environment only when they  
 4546 address aspects that are outside the scope of the base PPs/PP-Modules.

4547 In the case where a PP-Module refines the TOE type, some security objectives for the environment of  
 4548 the base PPs/PP-Modules **can** become security objectives for the TOE in the PP-Module.

4549 This section also defines the rationale between the SPD and the security objectives of the PP-Module,  
 4550 which consists of a mapping that traces the SPD of the PP-Module to their security objectives as well as  
 4551 a justification demonstrating that the tracing is effective, as specified in 7.2.5. Moreover, the mapping  
 4552 has to show not only that all the SPD-elements are covered but also that there is no useless security  
 4553 objective.

4554 It **can** happen that some security objectives of the PP-Module cover also SPD-elements of the base  
 4555 PPs/PP-Modules that do not belong to the SPD of the PP-Module itself. This information is not required  
 4556 but **may** be provided in application notes.

#### 4557 **C.2.2.8 Extended functional components definition**

4558 This section is identical to the PP and ST extended components section specified in Clause B.3.6.

#### 4559 **C.2.2.9 Security requirements**

##### 4560 **C.2.2.10 General**

4561 The security requirements consist of two groups of requirements:

- 4562 a) *the security functional requirements* (SFRs): a translation of the security objectives for the TOE  
 4563 into a standardized language;
- 4564 b) *the security assurance requirements* (SARs): a description of how assurance is to be gained that  
 4565 the TOE meets the SFRs.

4566 These two groups are discussed in 7.3.

##### 4567 **C.2.2.11 Security functional requirements**

4568 This section defines the security functional requirements for the TOE in relationship with the set of TOE  
 4569 security objectives in the PP-Module and with the security functional requirements of the base PPs/PP-  
 4570 Modules.

4571 Each security functional requirement **may** either come from a base PP/PP-Module or be entirely new.  
 4572 Let “R” be a security functional requirement of the PP-Module, one of the following cases holds:

- 4573 — “R” belongs to an identified base PP/PP-Module; a reference to the requirement is sufficient,
- 4574 — “R” is a refinement of an SFR in a base PPs/PP-Module,
- 4575 — “R” is a new requirement introduced by the PP-Module.

4576 NOTE The refined requirements can be dealt with as new ones without any impact on the meaning of the  
 4577 whole set of requirements.

4578 This section also defines the rationale between the SFRs and the TOE security objectives of the PP-  
 4579 Module, which consists of a mapping that traces the SFRs to the TOE objectives of the PP-Module and a  
 4580 justification demonstrating that the tracing is effective, as specified in 7.2.5. Moreover, the mapping  
 4581 **shall** show not only that all the objectives for the TOE are covered but also that there is no useless  
 4582 security functional requirement.

4583 It **may** happen that some SFRs of the PP-Module cover also TOE security objectives of the base PPs/PP-  
 4584 Modules that do not belong to the PP-Module itself. This information is not required but **may** be  
 4585 provided in application notes.

4586 PP-Modules **may** define and include optional SFRs (and any required SPD elements) as previously  
 4587 specified for PPs in B.3.7.

4588 **C.2.2.12 Security assurance requirements**

4589 A PP-Module of strict or demonstrable conformance defines the set of SARs to be used in PP-  
 4590 Configurations that include this PP-Module. The assurance rationale described in C.2.2.4. ensures the  
 4591 consistency of this set of SARs with regard to the base PPs/PP-Modules.

4592 A PP-Module of exact conformance inherits the set of SARs, including any assurance packages such as  
 4593 the pre-defined EALs, from its base PPs. The issue of ANDed base PPs with different EALs must be  
 4594 resolved and is dealt with in the same way that a PP conformant to all those PPs deals with the issue.

4595 **C.2.3 TOE summary specification (TSS)**

4596 Unlike a ST, a PP-Module has no TOE summary specification.

4597 **C.2.4 Direct Rationale PP-Modules**

4598 PP-Modules can be written with the intention that they be used with a Direct Rationale PP(s) as their  
 4599 base PP(s). In this case security objectives for the TOE are not included in the PP-Module and security  
 4600 objectives for the TOE's operational environment may be included.

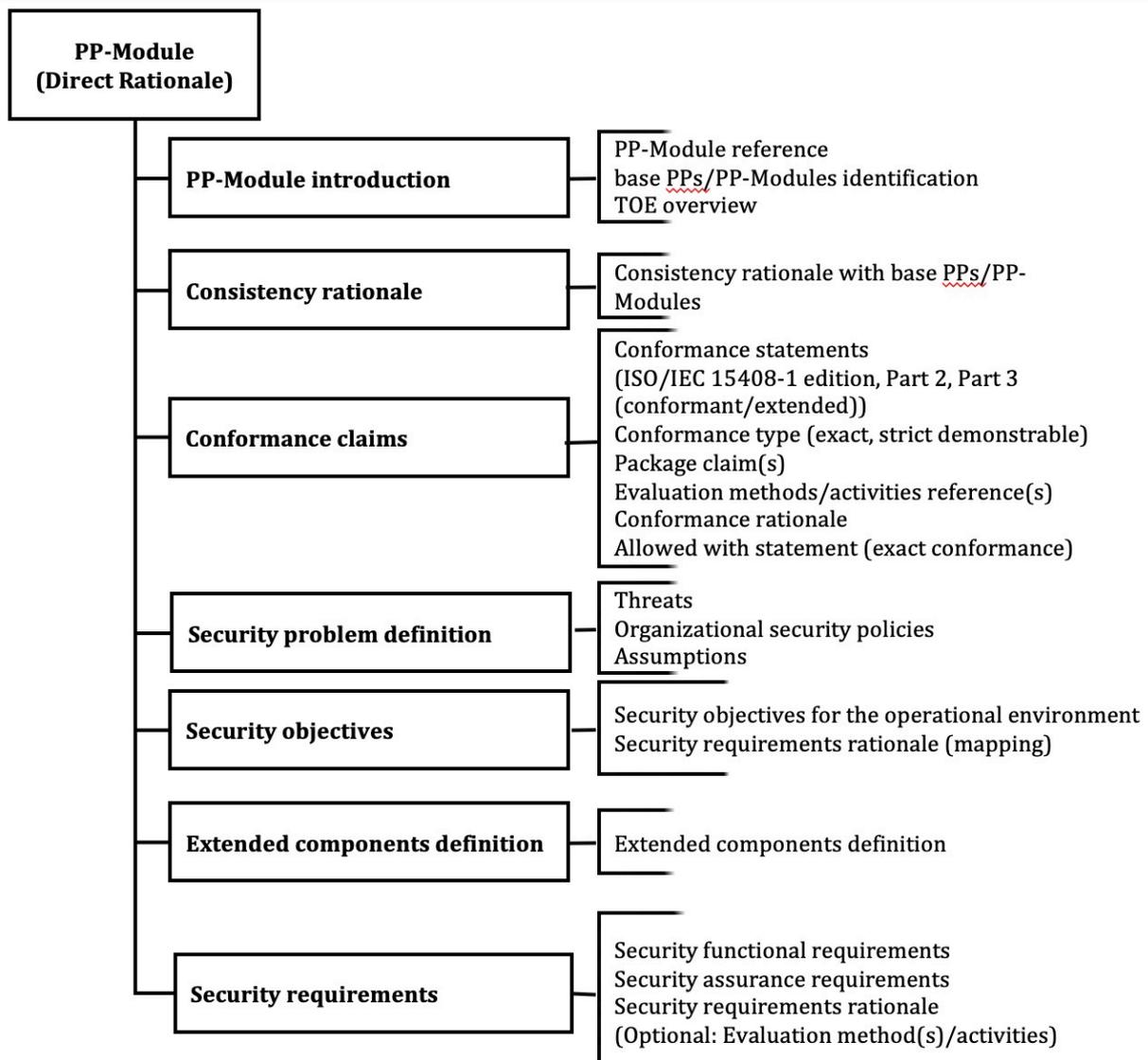


Figure C.3 — Direct Rationale PP-Module

4601 The contents of a Direct Rationale PP-Module are shown in Figure C.3.

4602 **C.2.5 Guidance for inclusion of SPD-elements from a base PP/PP-Module**

4603 In order to limit the amount of information contained in the PP-Module, the PP-Module author applies  
 4604 the following rules:

4605 Let E, O and R belong to the SPD, the security objectives, and the security functional requirements of a  
 4606 PP/PP-Module Q, respectively, with R mapped to O and O mapped to E.

4607 Let M be a PP-Module and let Q be one of the base PP/PP-Module of M.

4608 M has to satisfy the following condition: E, O, R, and the mappings between them **should** belong to M  
 4609 only if at least one of these elements is linked to a new element in M, that is

- 4610 — Either there is a new SPD-element E' in M such that O is mapped to E', or
- 4611 — There is a new objective O' in M such that O' is mapped to E' or R is mapped to O', or
- 4612 — There is a new requirement R' in M such that R' is mapped to O.

4613 That is, a PP-Module would not contain portions of base PPs/PP-Modules unless they are required to  
 4614 fulfil new needs. Here, refined elements are considered new.

### 4615 C.2.6 Optional Contents of a PP-Module

4616 PP-Modules **may** optionally include evaluation methods and/or activities that have been derived from  
 4617 ISO/IEC 18045. Evaluation methods and/or activities that are associated with the PP-Module are  
 4618 referenced in the conformance claims section. See 11.2.3.3.

4619 If the PP-Module author decides to include any evaluation method(s) and/or activities in the PP-Module  
 4620 then they **may** be provided in the security requirement section with the relevant security requirement  
 4621 or in any other suitable section or external document. Application notes, when appropriate, should be  
 4622 associated with the specific requirements in the PP-Module.

## 4623 C.3 Specification of PP-Configurations

### 4624 C.3.1 Mandatory content of a PP-Configuration

#### 4625 C.3.1.1 General

4626 The content of a PP-Configuration is summarized below in Figure C.4 and explained in detail in Annexes  
 4627 C.3.1.2 through C.3.1.7.

4628 A PP-Configuration contains:

- 4629 — a reference that uniquely identifies the PP-Configuration,
- 4630 — a components statement that identifies the PPs and the PP-Modules composing the PP-  
 4631 Configuration, including all the base PPs/PP-Modules required to define a closed set of  
 4632 components,
- 4633 — a conformance claim, that specifies the edition of ISO/IEC 15408, the claims to ISO/IEC 15408-2  
 4634 and ISO/IEC 15408-3, the claims to assurance packages, and the conformance statement that  
 4635 defines whether the conformance of STs to this PP-Configuration has to be exact, strict,  
 4636 demonstrable, or a combination of strict and demonstrable inherited from its set of  
 4637 components, and any applicable evaluation methods and/or activities,
- 4638 — a description of the TOE type,
- 4639 — a description of the TSF organization in terms of the sub-TSFs defined by the PP-Configuration  
 4640 components,
- 4641 — a SAR statement, specifying the set of the SAR that are applicable to the entire TOE. In a multi-  
 4642 assurance case, the SAR statement includes the sets of SARs that apply to the sub-TSFs defined  
 4643 in the PP-Configuration components. The SAR statement also includes the assurance rationale  
 4644 to ensure consistency between the PP-Configuration and its components.

4645 NOTE An assurance package can be an EAL drawn from ISO/IEC 15408-5.

4646

4647

4648 **C.3.1.2 PP-Configuration reference**

4649 The PP-Configuration reference provides a clear and unambiguous identification, usually made of a title,  
4650 version number, author, and the publication date.

4651 The PP-Configuration reference **can** be used to index the document in catalogues.

4652 **C.3.1.3 Components statement**

4653 The PP-Configuration components statement identifies the PPs and the PP-Modules that compose the  
4654 PP-Configuration.

4655 The PP-Configuration components statement **shall** include the base PPs/PP-Modules required by the  
4656 specified PP-Modules. If a PP-Module specifies alternative sets of base PPs/PP-Modules, only one of  
4657 these sets **shall** be referred to in the PP-Configuration.

4658 NOTE PP-Configurations do not directly claim conformance to functional packages, regardless of whether  
4659 they are claimed by one of their components or not.

4660 In the multi-assurance case, the PP-Configuration components statement shall provide the TSF  
4661 organization in terms of the sub-TSFs defined by the components of the PP-Configuration.

4662 **C.3.1.4 TOE overview**

4663 The TOE overview of a PP-Configuration **shall** provide:

- 4664 — The TOE type of the PP-Configuration, to be used by STs claiming conformance with the PP-  
4665 Configuration.
- 4666 — The expected usage and major security features of the TOE.
- 4667 — The available non-TOE hardware, software and/or firmware (if applicable).

4668 **C.3.1.5 Consistency rationale**

4669 A PP-Configuration **shall** provide a consistency rationale to ensure the compatibility of the combination  
4670 of components.

4671 The consistency rationale **shall** demonstrate that the TOE overview is consistent with the TOE overview  
4672 of the PP-Configuration components and that the unions of SPDs, objectives, and security functional  
4673 requirements defined in these components do not lead to a contradiction.

4674 The consistency rationale **may** use correspondence tables between SPD/objectives/SFRs together with  
4675 textual justifications.

4676 **C.3.1.6 Conformance claim and conformance statement**

4677 **C.3.1.6.1 ISO/IEC 15408-1 conformance claim**

4678 The edition of ISO/IEC 15408-1 and ISO/IEC 15408-3 applicable to the PP-Configuration;

4679 NOTE The combination of different ISO/IEC 15408 editions in the PP-Configuration may be subject to  
4680 compatibility issues, which must be addressed by the evaluation schemes

4681 **C.3.1.6.2 The conformance type**

4682 The conformance to this PP-Configuration by a ST **shall** be one of exact, strict, or demonstrable; or a  
4683 combination of strict and demonstrable if the PP-Configuration contains components of both  
4684 conformance types.

4685 Any ST that claims conformance to a PP-Configuration **shall** conform to the conformance type required  
4686 in the conformance statement of the PP-Configuration.

4687 **C.3.1.6.3 Assurance package conformance claim**

4688 **The conformance claim may** include an assurance package conformance claim describing any  
4689 conformance of the PP-Configuration to an assurance package. More than one package may be claimed  
4690 in a PP-Configuration.

4691 **C.3.1.6.4 Evaluation methods/activities references statement(s)**

4692 The PP-Configuration EM/EA references statement **may** specify the set of evaluation methods and/or  
4693 activities that are applicable to the evaluation of the TOE specified in a ST based on the PP-  
4694 Configuration.

4695 A PP-Configuration **may** specify evaluation methods and/or activities in addition to those referenced in  
4696 the PP-Configuration components.

4697 NOTE In the case of strict or demonstrable conformance, it is not mandatory to declare every applicable  
4698 EM/EA.

4699 NOTE In the case of exact conformance, it is mandatory to declare every applicable EM/EA. See C.3.1.6.5 for  
4700 restrictions on the specification of additional EM/EA in the case of exact conformance.

4701 **C.3.1.6.5 Additional requirements for exact conformance**

4702 If a PP-Configuration specifies exact conformance as its conformance type in its conformance statement  
4703 then:

4704 — If any one component in the PP-Configuration requires exact conformance, then all other  
4705 components in the PP-Configuration **shall** also require exact conformance, and the conformance  
4706 statement of the PP-Configuration **shall** specify exact conformance.

4707 — All of the PP-Configuration components **shall** be allowed to be combined in their respective  
4708 allowed-with statements. This is illustrated in Figure C.5.

4709 — All components in the PP-Configuration **shall** allow all the other components in the PP-  
4710 Configuration to be used together in the PP-Configuration in their respective allowed-with  
4711 statement in the conformance claims section.

4712 NOTE A PP-Module does not need to include its own base PPs/PP-Modules in its allowed-with  
4713 statement because they are implicitly allowed. An example is provided in Figure C.5..

4714 — The EM/EA that are applied to a PP-Configuration **shall** be only those that are contained in the  
4715 PP-Configuration's components; no additional evaluation methods/activities or modifications to  
4716 the PP-Configuration components' evaluation methods/activities are allowed.

4717 EXAMPLE

4718

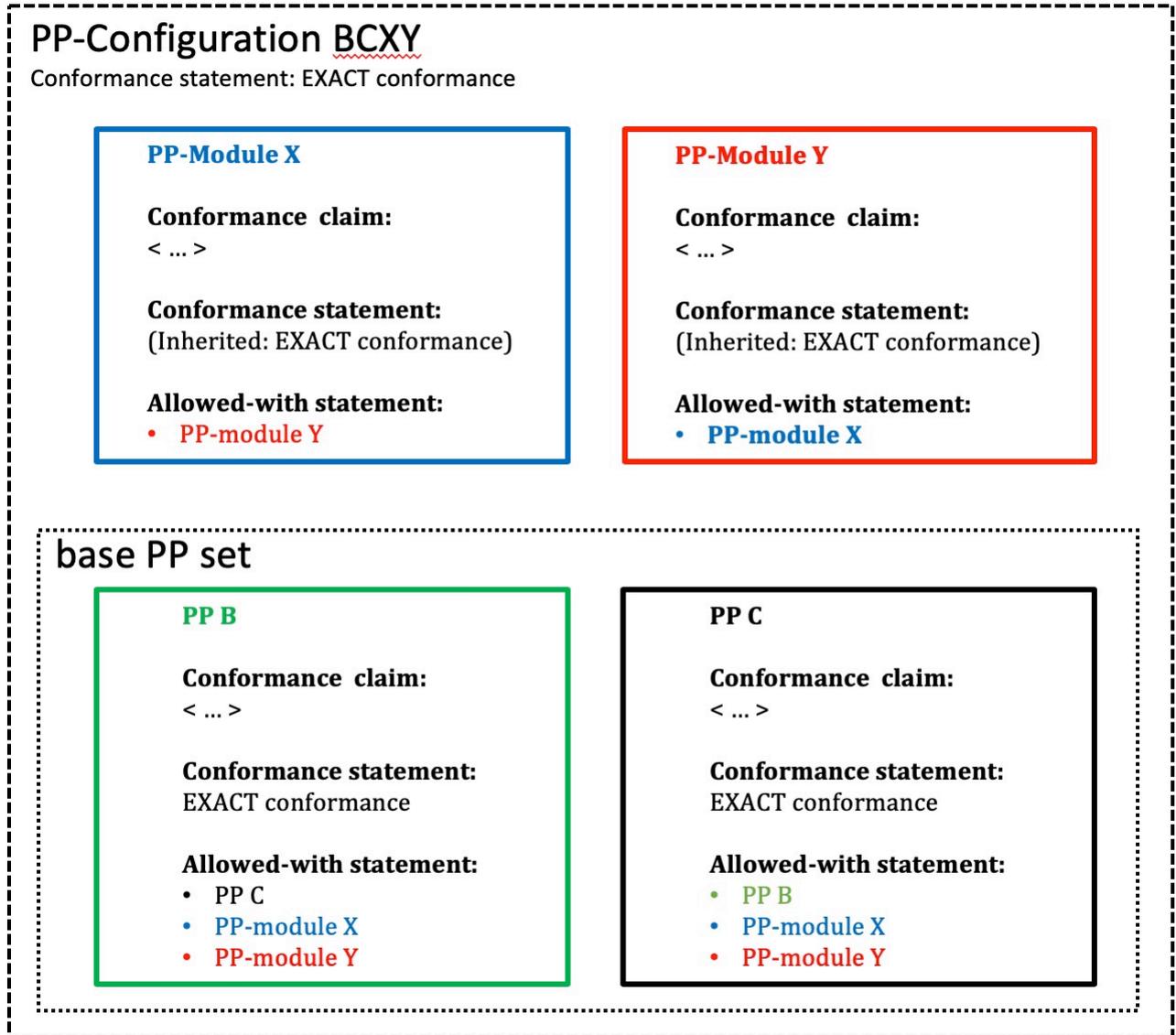


Figure C.5 — PP-Configuration and exact conformance

4719 A PP-Configuration requires exact conformance in its conformance statement because exact conformance is

4720 required in both base PPs, and is therefore inherited by the PP-Modules. PP-Modules X and Y both have an  
4721 identical base PP set: PP B and PP C both of which require exact conformance. The following statements (shown in  
4722 the diagram) **must** be true for this to be an evaluable PP-Configuration with a conformance statement of “exact  
4723 conformance”:

- 4724 a) The PP-Modules inherit the conformance statement from their base PPs, so their conformance statement  
4725 is exact conformance.
- 4726 b) The PP-Configuration **must** require exact conformance since the PP-Modules require exact conformance.
- 4727 c) PP B **must** specify in its conformance statement that it is allowed to be used with PP C, PP-Module X, and  
4728 PP-Module Y.
- 4729 d) PP C **must** specify in its conformance statement that it is allowed to be used with PP B, PP-Module X, and  
4730 PP-Module Y.
- 4731 e) PP-Module X **must** specify in its conformance statement that it is allowed to be used with PP-Module Y.
- 4732 f) PP-Module Y **must** specify in its conformance statement that it is allowed to be used with PP-Module X.

### 4733 C.3.1.7 SAR statement

4734 The PP-Configuration SAR statement specifies the set of SARs applicable to the evaluation of a TOE  
4735 specified by a ST that claims conformance to this PP-Configuration. In a multi-assurance case, when the  
4736 PP-Configuration components carry different sets of SARs, the PP-Configuration must define the set of  
4737 SARs that applies to each of the sub-TSF defined by these components.

4738 The set of SARs that apply to the entire TOE, called global assurance package, is a superset of the  
4739 common subset of SARs that apply to each of the PP-Configurations components.

4740 In the PP-Configuration, the set of SARs that applies to each of the sub-TSF is either identical to the set  
4741 of SARs defined in the corresponding PP-Configuration component or an augmentation of this set.

#### 4742 EXAMPLE

4743 An example of a set of SARs is an EAL assurance package predefined in ISO/IEC 15408-5.

4744 A PP-Configuration has to provide an assurance rationale to demonstrate the consistency of the  
4745 applicable set of SARs with those defined in its components, in particular with regard to the common  
4746 assets.

4747 NOTE The assurance rationale of the PP-configuration must extend the analysis given in the PP-Modules to  
4748 all the components of the PP-Configuration together. Usually this is done by unfolding the SPD-elements of the PP-  
4749 Configuration components and analyzing the sets of SARs applicable to each asset.

## Annex D (Normative)

### Specification of Security Targets and Direct Rationale STs

#### D.1 Goal and structure of this Annex

The goal of this annex is to summarize the structure and expected content of a ST.

As PPs and STs have a significant overlap, this annex focuses on the differences between PPs and STs. The material that is identical between STs and PPs is described in Annex B.

NOTE This annex does not define the requirements for the evaluation of STs. The ST evaluation criteria are found in the ASE class in ISO/IEC 15408-3.

This annex consists of four major parts:

- a) *How to use a ST.* This is summarized in D.2. These subclauses describe how a ST **should be** used, and some of the questions that can be answered with a ST.
- b) *What a ST **must** contain.* This is detailed in D.3. These subclauses describe the mandatory contents of the ST, the interrelationships between these contents, and provide examples.
- c) *Claiming conformance with standards.* D.5 describes how a ST author **can** claim that the TOE meets a particular standard.
- d) *Direct Rationale STs.* Direct Rationale STs are STs in which the SFRs and possibly to security objectives for the operational environment are mapped directly to the SPD-elements. Subclause D.4 is applicable to Direct Rationale STs.

#### D.2 Using a ST

##### D.2.1 How to use a ST

A typical ST fulfils two roles:

- Before and during the evaluation, the ST specifies “what is to be evaluated”. In this role, the ST serves as a basis for agreement between the developer and the evaluator on the exact security properties of the TOE and the exact scope of the evaluation. Technical correctness and completeness are major issues for this role. D.3.2 and D.3.5 describe how the ST is used in this role.
- After the evaluation, the ST specifies “what was evaluated”. In this role, the ST serves as a basis for agreement between the developer or re-seller of the TOE and the potential consumer of the TOE. The ST describes the exact security properties of the TOE in an abstract manner, and the potential consumer **can** rely on this description because the TOE has been evaluated to meet the ST. Ease of use and understandability are major issues for this role. D.2.3 describes how the ST is used in this role.

##### D.2.2 How not to use a ST

One role, among many, that a ST **should not** fulfil is:

- *a complete specification:* A ST is designed to be a security specification and not a complete specification. Unless security-relevant, properties such as interoperability, physical size, and weight, required voltage etc. **should not** be part of a ST. This means that in general a ST **may** be a part of a complete specification, but not a complete specification itself.

4790 **D.2.3 Questions that can be answered with a ST**

4791 After the evaluation, the ST specifies “what was evaluated”. In this role, the ST serves as a basis for  
 4792 agreement between the developer or re-seller of the TOE and the potential consumer of the TOE. The ST  
 4793 can therefore answer the following questions (and more):

- 4794 a) *How can I find the ST/TOE that I need given the multitude of existing STs/TOEs?* This question is  
 4795 addressed by the TOE overview, which gives a brief (several paragraphs) summary of the TOE;
- 4796 b) *Does this TOE fit in with my existing IT-infrastructure?* This question is addressed by the TOE  
 4797 overview, which identifies the major hardware/firmware/software elements needed to run the  
 4798 TOE;
- 4799 c) *Does this TOE fit in with my existing operational environment?* This question is addressed by the  
 4800 security objectives for the operational environment, which identifies all constraints the TOE  
 4801 places on the operational environment in order to function;
- 4802 d) *What does the TOE do (interested reader)?* This question is addressed by the TOE overview,  
 4803 which gives a brief (several paragraphs) summary of the TOE;
- 4804 e) *What does the TOE do (potential consumer)?* This question is addressed by the TOE description,  
 4805 which gives a less brief (several pages) summary of the TOE;
- 4806 f) *What does the TOE do (technical)?* This question is addressed by the TOE summary specification  
 4807 which provides a high-level description of the mechanisms the TOE uses;
- 4808 g) *What does the TOE do (expert)?* This question is addressed by the SFRs which provide an  
 4809 abstract highly technical description, and the TOE summary specification which provide  
 4810 additional detail;
- 4811 h) *Does the TOE address the problem as defined by my government/organization?* If your  
 4812 government/organization has defined packages and/or PPs and/or PP-Configurations to define  
 4813 this solution, then the answer can be found in the Conformance Claims section of the ST, which  
 4814 lists all packages, PPs and PP-Configurations that the ST conforms to;
- 4815 i) *Does the TOE address my security problem (expert)?* What are the threats countered by the TOE?  
 4816 What organizational security policies does it enforce? What assumptions does it make about the  
 4817 operational environment? These questions are addressed by the security problem definition;
- 4818 j) *How much trust can I place in the TOE?* This can be found in the SARs in the security  
 4819 requirements section, which provide the assurance requirements that were used to evaluate the  
 4820 TOE, and hence the trust that the evaluation provides in the correctness of the TOE.

4821 **D.3 Mandatory contents of a ST**

4822 **D.3.1 General**

4823 There are two types of ST. Firstly the “regular” ST which is a ST that contains the full contents as  
 4824 described in D.3.3 through D.3.7.2. Secondly, in some cases a ST author may use a Direct Rationale ST  
 4825 which does not state the security objectives for the TOE. Direct Rationale STs, and the reasons and  
 4826 circumstances in which they are used are described in detail in D.4 All other parts of this Annex assume  
 4827 a ST with full contents.

4828 Figure D.1 shows the contents of a ST that are given in ISO/IEC 15408- 3.

4829 Figure D.1 may also be used as a structural outline of the ST, though alternative structures are allowed.  
 4830 For instance, if the security requirements rationale is particularly bulky, it could be included in an  
 4831 appendix of the ST instead of in the security requirements section. The separate sections of a ST and the  
 4832 contents of those sections are briefly summarized below and explained in much more detail in D.3.3  
 4833 through D.3.7.2. A ST contains:

- 4834 a) *a ST introduction* containing three narrative descriptions of the TOE on different levels of  
 4835 abstraction;

- 4836 b) *a conformance claim*, stating the ST’s conformance to 15408-2 and 15408-3; showing whether  
 4837 the ST claims conformance to any PPs, PP-Configurations, and/or packages; and if so identifying  
 4838 the specific PPs, PP-Configurations, and/or packages, and the type of conformance claimed;
- 4839 c) *a security problem definition*, showing threats, OSPs and assumptions;
- 4840 d) *security objectives*, showing how the solution to the security problem is divided between  
 4841 security objectives for the TOE and security objectives for the operational environment of the  
 4842 TOE;
- 4843 e) *extended components definitions* (optional), where new components (i.e. those not included in  
 4844 ISO/IEC 15408-2 or ISO/IEC 15408-3) may be defined. These new components are needed to  
 4845 define extended functional and extended assurance requirements;
- 4846 f) *security requirements*, where a translation of the security objectives for the TOE into a  
 4847 standardized language is provided. This standardized language is in the form of SFRs.  
 4848 Additionally, this section defines the SARs;
- 4849 g) *a TOE summary specification*, showing how the SFRs are implemented in the TOE.  
 4850

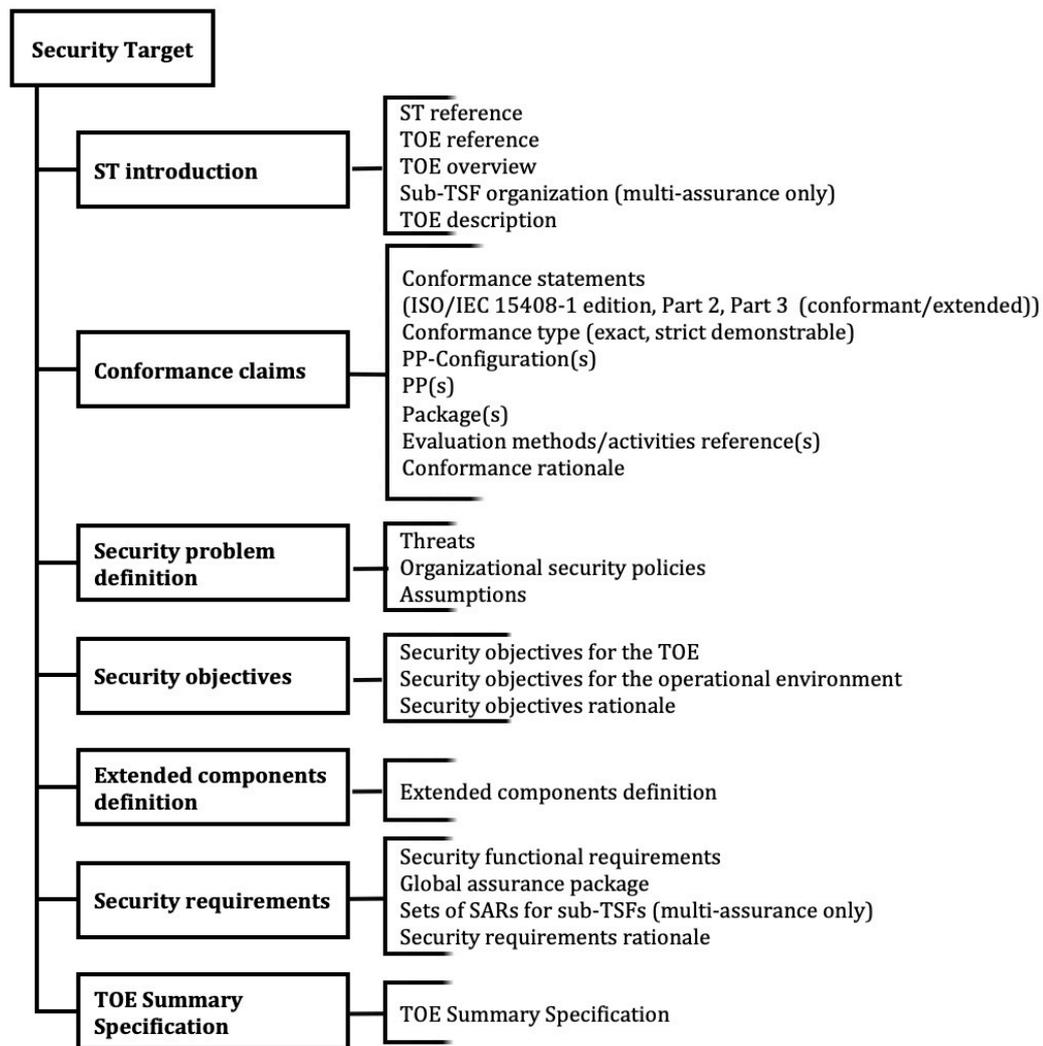


Figure D.1 — Contents of a ST

4851 **D.3.2 ST Introduction (ASE\_INT)**

4852 The ST introduction describes the TOE in a narrative way on three levels of abstraction:

- 4853 a) the ST reference and the TOE reference, which provide identification material for the ST and the  
4854 TOE that the ST refers to;
- 4855 b) the TOE overview, which briefly describes the TOE;
- 4856 c) the TOE description, which describes the TOE in more detail.

#### 4857 **D.3.2.1 ST reference and TOE reference**

4858 The ST reference and the TOE reference facilitate indexing and referencing the ST and TOE and their  
4859 inclusion in catalogues.

4860 A ST contains a clear ST reference that identifies that particular ST. A typical ST reference consists of  
4861 title, version, sponsors, and publication date.

##### 4862 EXAMPLE 1

4863 An example of a ST reference is “MauveRAM Database ST, version 1.3, MauveCorp Specification Team, 11 October  
4864 2017”.

4865 A ST also contains a TOE reference that identifies the TOE that claims conformance to the ST. A typical  
4866 TOE reference consists of developer name, TOE name and TOE version number. A single TOE **may** be  
4867 evaluated multiple times, for instance by different consumers of that TOE, and therefore have multiple  
4868 STs associated with this this reference.

##### 4869 EXAMPLE 2

4870 An example of a TOE reference is “MauveCorp MauveRAM Database v5.12”.

4871 If the TOE is constructed from one or more well-known products, it is allowed to reflect this in the TOE  
4872 reference, by referring to the product name(s). However, this **should** not be used to mislead consumers:  
4873 situations where major parts or security functionalities were not considered in the evaluation, yet the  
4874 TOE reference does not reflect this are not allowed.

#### 4875 **D.3.2.2 TOE overview**

4876 The TOE overview is aimed at potential consumers of a TOE who are looking through catalogs of  
4877 evaluated TOEs/Products to find TOEs that meet their security needs, and are supported by their  
4878 hardware, software, and firmware. The typical length of a TOE overview is several paragraphs.

4879 To this end, the TOE overview briefly describes the usage of the TOE and its major security features,  
4880 identifies the TOE type, and identifies any major non-TOE hardware/software/firmware required by  
4881 the TOE.

4882 In the case of a multi-assurance ST, the TOE overview also provides the TSF organization in terms of the  
4883 sub-TSFs defined in the PP-Configuration the ST claims conformance to.

##### 4884 **D.3.2.2.1 Usage and major security features of a TOE**

4885 The description of the usage and major security features of the TOE is intended to give a very general  
4886 idea of what the TOE is capable of in terms of security, and what it can be used for in a security context.  
4887 This section of the ST is written for (potential) TOE consumers, describing TOE usage and major  
4888 security features in terms of business operations, using language that TOE consumers understand.

##### 4889 EXAMPLE

4890 “The MauveCorp MauveRAM Database v5.12 is a multi-user database intended to be used in a networked  
4891 environment. It allows 1024 users to be active simultaneously. It allows password/token and biometric  
4892 authentication, protects against accidental data corruption, and **can** roll-back ten thousand transactions. Its audit  
4893 features are highly configurable, so as to allow detailed audit to be performed for some users and transactions,  
4894 while protecting the privacy of other users and transactions.”

##### 4895 **D.3.2.2.2 TOE type**

4896 The TOE overview identifies the type of TOE, such as: firewall, VPN-firewall, smart card, crypto-modem,  
4897 intranet, web server, database, web server and database, LAN, LAN with web server and database, etc.

4898 In the case that the TOE is not of a readily available type, in which case a TOE type of “none” can be  
4899 used.

4900 The identification of the TOE type shall not be misleading for consumers.

4901 EXAMPLE

4902 Examples of misleading TOE types include:

- 4903 — certain functionality can be expected of the TOE because of its TOE type, but the TOE does not have this  
4904 functionality. Examples include:
  - 4905 – an ATM-card type of TOE, which does not support any identification/authentication functionality;
  - 4906 – a firewall type of TOE, which does not support protocols that are almost universally used;
  - 4907 – a PKI-type of TOE, which has no certificate revocation functionality.
- 4908 — the TOE can be expected to operate in certain operational environments because of its TOE type, but it  
4909 cannot do so.:
  - 4910 – a PC-operating system type of TOE, which is unable to function securely unless the PC has no network  
4911 connection, floppy drive, and CD/DVD-player;
  - 4912 – a firewall, which is unable to function securely unless all users that can connect through that firewall  
4913 are benign.

#### 4914 D.3.2.2.3 Required non-TOE hardware/software/firmware

4915 While some TOEs do not rely upon other IT, many TOEs (notably software TOEs) rely on additional,  
4916 non-TOE, hardware, software and/or firmware. In the latter case, the TOE overview is required to  
4917 identify such non-TOE hardware, software and/or firmware. A complete and fully detailed  
4918 identification of the additional hardware, software and/or firmware is not necessary, but the  
4919 identification shall be complete and detailed enough for potential consumers to determine the major  
4920 hardware, software and/or firmware needed to use the TOE.

4921 EXAMPLE

4922 Example hardware/software/firmware identifications are:

- 4923 – a standard PC with a dual core 2.10 GHz or faster processor and 4GB or more RAM, running the  
4924 Yaiza operating system for professionals, version 53.0 Update 6b, c, or 7, or version 54.0;
- 4925 – a standard 64-bit server with a 2xQuad-Core core processor and 16GB or more RAM, running  
4926 the Yaiza operating system, server edition version 7.0 Update 6d, and the WonderMagic 12.0  
4927 Graphics card with the 1.0 WM Driver Set;
- 4928 – a CleverCard SB17067 integrated circuit;
- 4929 – a CleverCard SB17067 integrated circuit running v12.0 of the QuickOS smart card operating  
4930 system;
- 4931 – the December 2019 installation of the LAN of the Director-General's Office of the Department of  
4932 Traffic.

#### 4933 D.3.2.2.4 TSF organization in sub-TSFs in the multi-assurance case

4934 A multi-assurance ST, i.e. a ST that claims conformance to a multi-assurance PP-Configuration and  
4935 which defines multiple sets of SARs for the different sub-TSFs, shall inherit the organization of the TSF  
4936 in sub-TSFs from the PP-Configuration.

4937 The TOE overview describes such organization, possibly completed with details of the actual TOE.

#### 4938 D.3.2.3 TOE description

4939 A TOE description is a narrative description of the TOE, likely to run to several pages. The TOE  
4940 description provides evaluators and potential consumers with a general understanding of the security  
4941 capabilities of the TOE, in more detail than was provided in the TOE overview. The TOE description may  
4942 also be used to describe the wider application context into which the TOE will fit.

4943 The TOE description discusses the physical scope of the TOE: a list of all hardware, firmware, software,  
4944 and guidance parts that constitute the TOE. This list shall be described at a level of detail that is  
4945 sufficient to give the reader a general understanding of those parts.

4946 The TOE description shall also discuss the logical scope of the TOE, including the major TOE functions  
4947 and provide a brief description of the security features (the TSF). The description provided shall be at a  
4948 level of detail that is sufficient to give the reader a general understanding of those features. This  
4949 description is expected to be in more detail than the major security features described in the TOE  
4950 overview.

4951 An important property of the physical and logical scopes is that they describe the TOE in such a way  
4952 that there remains no doubt on whether a certain part or feature is in the TOE or whether this part or  
4953 feature is outside the TOE. This is especially important when the TOE is integrated with and cannot be  
4954 easily separated from non-TOE entities.

#### 4955 EXAMPLE 1

4956 Examples where the TOE is integrated with non-TOE entities are:

- 4957 — the TOE is a cryptographic co-processor of a smartcard IC, instead of the entire IC;
- 4958 — the TOE is a smartcard IC, except for the cryptographic processor;
- 4959 — the TOE is the Network Address Translation part of the MinuteGap Firewall v28.2.

4960 In some cases, third-party components can present practical difficulties in obtaining evidence.

#### 4961 EXAMPLE 2

4962 An example of where sufficient evidence for evaluation is not available from third-parties includes when source  
4963 code, design documentation or test evidence cannot be made available to the developer of the TOE.

### 4964 D.3.3 Conformance claims (ASE\_CCL)

4965 The conformance claims section of a ST describes how the ST conforms with ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts),  
4966 packages, PPs, and PP-Configurations. It is identical to the conformance claims section for a PP  
4967 described in B.3.3 with one exception, a ST does not have a conformance type since it is not allowed to  
4968 claim conformance to another ST.

4969 In the exact conformance scenario, a ST may conform to only one single-assurance PP-Configuration.

4970 In the multi-assurance scenario, a ST shall conform to only one multi-assurance PP-Configuration.

### 4971 D.3.4 Security problem definition (ASE\_SPD)

4972 The SPD section of a ST describes how the ST states the security problem that is to be addressed. It is  
4973 identical to the SPD section for a PP described in B.3.4.

4974 For a ST that conforms to PPs and/or PP-Configuration, the ST includes all the SPD elements defined in  
4975 these PPs and PP-Configurations components. Remark that an assumption in a PP or PP-Configuration  
4976 component may become an objective for the TOE in the ST.

### 4977 D.3.5 Security objectives (ASE\_OBJ)

4978 This section of a ST is identical to the security objectives section of a PP as explained in B.3.5 and B.5.

4979 For a ST that conforms to PPs and/or PP-Configuration, the ST includes all the objectives defined in  
4980 these PPs and PP-Configurations components. Remark that objectives for the TOE operational  
4981 environment in a PP or PP-Configuration component may become an objective for the TOE in the ST.

### 4982 D.3.6 Extended Components Definition (ASE\_ECD)

4983 This section of a ST is identical to the extended components section of a PP as explained in B.3.6.

4984 **D.3.7 Security requirements (ASE\_REQ)**4985 **D.3.7.1 Security Functional Requirements**4986 **D.3.7.1.1 General**

4987 This section of a ST is identical to the security requirements section of a PP as explained in B.3.7 with  
 4988 the exception that the specification of selection-based SFRs and optional requirements is not applicable  
 4989 in STs because all the SFRs must be fully instantiated.

4990 For a ST that conforms to PPs and/or PP-Configuration, the ST includes all the SFRs defined in these PPs  
 4991 and PP-Configurations components.

4992 **D.3.7.1.2 Including requirements in STs**

4993 For STs with exact conformance to a PP all requirements in the PP **shall** be included. Requirements that  
 4994 are not found in the PP **shall** not be included in the ST.

4995 For STs with strict conformance to a PP all requirements in a PP **shall** be included.

4996 For STs with demonstrable conformance to a PP all requirements in a PP **shall** be included, or a  
 4997 rationale explaining how they are otherwise met **shall** be provided in the ST.

4998 For STs with strict or demonstrable conformance to a PP, additional requirements not found in the PP  
 4999 **may** be included provided they support additional security objectives/cover additional threats.

5000 For a STs claiming conformance to a PP-Configuration, the same rules as for conformance to a PP  
 5001 applies. In that case, the requirements are taken from the components of the PP-Configuration, i.e. its  
 5002 PPs and PP-Modules. If the PP-Configuration contains components that require different conformance  
 5003 type (strict and demonstrable only, because exact conformance cannot be combined with other types),  
 5004 the ST conforms to each of the components (PPs and PP-Modules) in the manner they require, either  
 5005 strict or demonstrable.

5006 If the ST claims conformance to a PP or PP-Configuration, and the PP or the components of the PP-  
 5007 Configuration contain optional requirements, the ST **may** instantiate these requirements, being sure to  
 5008 include any required SPD-elements associated with those requirements. This **may** be done regardless  
 5009 of the conformance required by the PP or PP-Configuration. Omitting optional SFRs in a ST does not  
 5010 constitute “partial conformance” to a PP or PP-Configuration, and thus is allowed.

5011 **EXAMPLE 1**

5012 Example of the specification of external standards in SFRs and their evaluation:

5013 **FCS\_CKM.1.1 Refinement:** The **TSF**<sup>1</sup> **shall** generate asymmetric cryptographic keys in accordance with a  
 5014 specified cryptographic key generation algorithm: RSA schemes using cryptographic key sizes of 2048-bit  
 5015 or greater that meet the following: **FIPS PUB 186-4, “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix**  
 5016 **B.3**<sup>2</sup>.

5017 Conformance to the standard as part of the fulfilment of the SFR by the TOE is then assessed in one of the  
 5018 following ways:

- 5019 - If an explicit Evaluation Activity has been defined for the SFR, then the evaluator actions in that  
 5020 Evaluation Activity are carried out;

---

<sup>1</sup> [selection: **TSF, TOE platform**]

<sup>2</sup> [selection:

- RSA schemes using cryptographic key sizes of 2048-bit or greater that meet the following: [selection:
  - **FIPS PUB 186-4, “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix B.3;**
  - **ANSI X9.31-1998, Section 4.1];**
- ECC schemes using “NIST curves” P-256, P-384 and [selection: P-521, no other curves] that meet the following:  
 FIPS PUB 186-4, “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix B.4;
- FFC schemes using cryptographic key sizes of 2048-bit or greater that meet the following: FIPS PUB 186-4,  
 “Digital Signature Standard (DSS)”, Appendix B.1 ]

- 5021 - If no explicit Evaluation Activity has been defined for the SFR then conformance is subsequently
- 5022 determined as if the full text of the standard is included as part of the SFR, applying the SARs that have
- 5023 been selected for the ST.

5024 **D.3.7.2 Security Assurance Requirements**

5025 The ST specifies the set of SARs applicable to the evaluation of a TOE.

5026 If the ST conforms to a PP or PP-Configuration, then the set of SARs must be consistent with the PP or

5027 PP-Configuration.

5028 If the ST conforms to a multi-assurance PP-Configuration, then

- 5029 - either the ST applies a one set of SARs to the entire TOE and TSF (consistent with the global
- 5030 assurance package defined in the PP-Configuration). In this case, the TOE must be evaluated
- 5031 following the single-assurance approach,
- 5032 - or the ST defines the global set of SARs that applies to the entire TOE and the sets of SARs that
- 5033 apply to each of the sub-TSF defined in the PP-Configuration (consistent with the sets of SARs
- 5034 defined in the PP-Configuration). In this case, the TOE must be evaluated following the multi-
- 5035 assurance approach.

5036 A multi-assurance ST (and STs that augment the SARs of the PPs/PP-Configurations they conform to)

5037 must provide an assurance rationale to demonstrate the consistency of the sets of SARs.

5038 **D.3.8 TOE summary specification (ASE\_TSS)**

5039 The objective for the TOE summary specification (TSS) is to provide potential consumers of the TOE

5040 with a description of how the TOE satisfies all the SFRs. The TOE summary specification provides the

5041 general technical mechanisms that the TOE uses for this purpose. The level of detail of this description

5042 shall be sufficient to enable potential consumers to understand the general form and implementation of

5043 the TOE.

5044 The statement of security requirements includes a natural language description, part of which describes

5045 how the SFRs combine together to provide security functionality in terms of the architecture that is

5046 visible (observable) to Administrators and other users, or in terms of internal features or properties.

5047 EXAMPLE 1:

5048 The following are examples of internal features:

- 5049 — Unavailability of residual data upon reallocation of a resource;
- 5050 — Hidden failure conditions of login/password-authentication;
- 5051 — Hidden biometric comparison score.

5052 EXAMPLE 2:

5053 If the TOE is an Internet PC and the SFRs contain FIA\_UAU.1 to specify authentication, the TOE summary

5054 specification should indicate how this authentication is done: password, token, iris scanning etc. More

5055 information, like applicable standards that the TOE uses to meet SFRs, or more detailed descriptions may also be

5056 provided.

5057 EXAMPLE 3:

5058 The TOE summary specification may reference Technical standards, for instance: “The TOE provides

5059 cryptographic functionality to perform an AES encryption and decryption with 128, 192- or 256-bits

5060 keys to the embedded software. The AES algorithm conforms with ISO/IEC 18033-3:2010, 5.2.”

5061

5062 Note 1 The ST is an input to ADV, which means that ADV allows to point out inconsistencies between TSS and

5063 other specifications. However, there is no dedicated evaluation activity specified, which reflects the fact that the

5064 TSS provides an overview of the realization of the SFRs by the TOE but does not constitute an implementation

5065 specification.

5066 NOTE 2 Since a Direct Rationale ST has no TOE summary specification, this option is not valid for Direct

5067 Rationale STs.

5068

5069 **D.4 Direct Rationale STs**

5070 **D.4.1 General**

5071 In some situations, it is appropriate to omit the definition of the TOE security objectives. In this case the  
 5072 Security Requirements rationale directly maps the SFRs and, where appropriate, security objectives for  
 5073 the operational environment, to the SPD.

5074 The intention of the Direct Rationale ST is to minimize the level of indirection between the SPD, any  
 5075 security objectives for the operational environment, and the SFRs, based on an enhanced description of  
 5076 the SFRs.

5077 The differences found in a Direct Rationale ST are in the conformance claims, security objectives and in  
 5078 the SPD sections. These are described in D.4.2 and D.4.3, below.

5079 The content of a Direct Rationale ST is shown in Figure D.2.

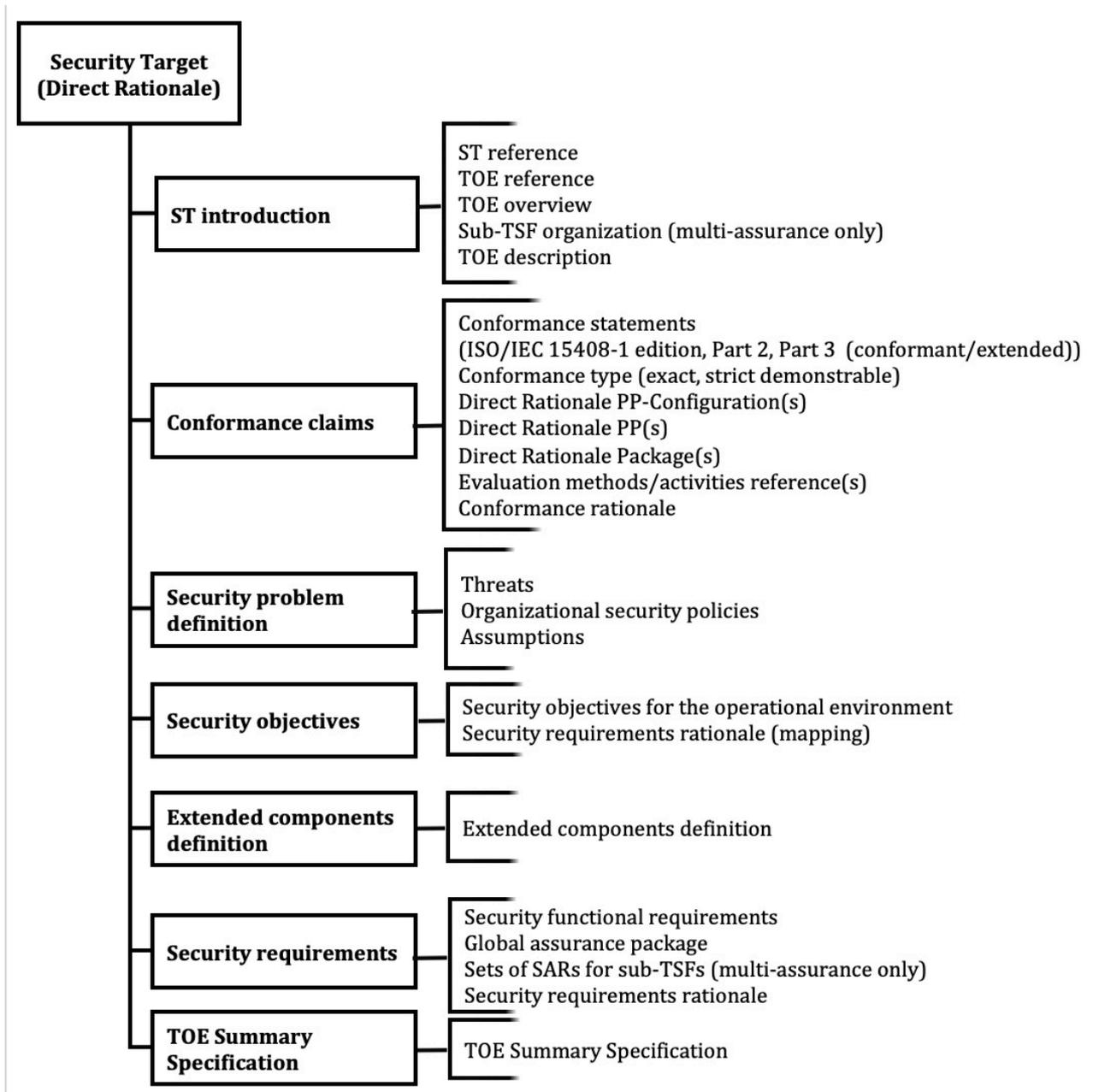


Figure D.2 — Contents of a Direct Rationale ST

5080 **D.4.2 Conformance claims (ASE\_CCL) for Direct Rationale STs**

5081 A Direct Rationale ST shall only claim conformance to other Direct Rationale PPs (see 12.2 and  
5082 Annex B).

5083 A Direct Rationale ST shall only claim conformance to a PP-Configuration that uses the Direct Rationale  
5084 approach. (see 12.2)

5085 **D.4.3 Security Problem Definition (ASE\_SPD) for Direct Rationale STs**

5086 **D.4.3.1 General**

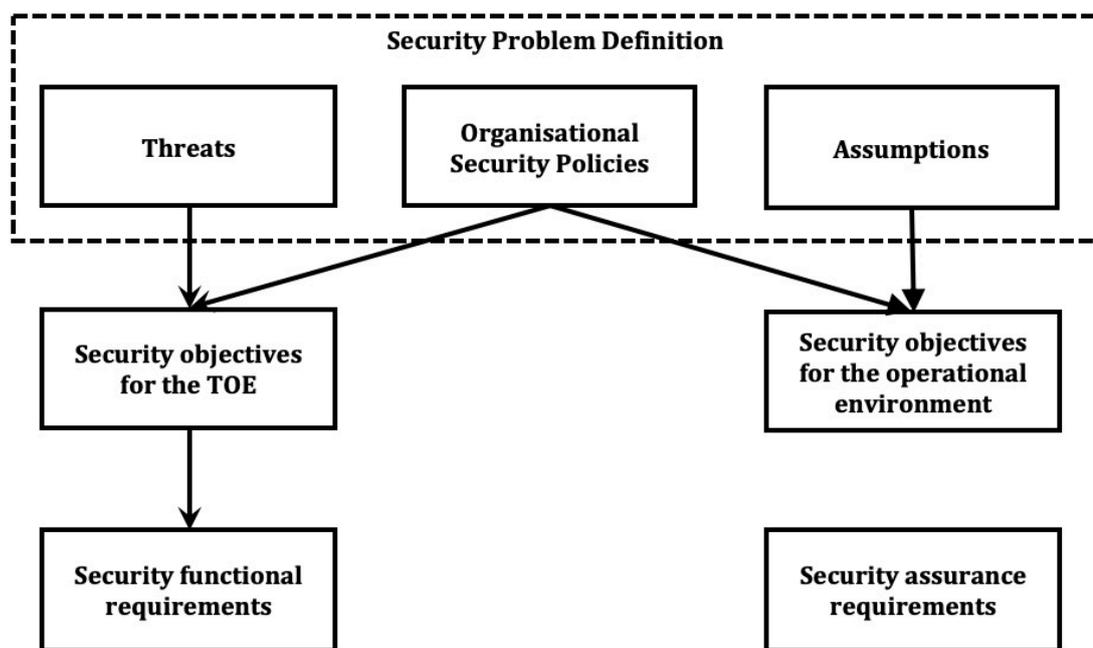
5087 A Direct Rationale ST has the following differences when compared to a ST that contains security  
5088 objectives for the TOE:

- 5089 — Security objectives for the TOE are not included.
- 5090 — A security objectives rationale is not included as there are no TOE security objectives in the ST;
- 5091 — A Security Requirements rationale that directly maps the SFRs and any security objectives for  
5092 the operational environment to the SPD-elements is included. It is recommended that this part  
5093 of the security requirements rationale is located directly under each of the threats, OSPs and  
5094 assumptions in the SPD section. As in a ST that contain security objectives for the TOE, the  
5095 security requirements rationale also needs to justify the absence of superfluous SFRs and any  
5096 SFR dependencies that are not satisfied; this part of the rationale is typically located after the  
5097 definition of the SFRs.
- 5098 — There is a requirement, given in ISO/IEC 15408-3, to provide a natural language description of  
5099 the SFRs and their relationship to security functionality in terms of the architecture that is  
5100 visible (observable) to Administrators and other users, or in terms of internal features or  
5101 properties.

5102 **D.4.3.2 Tracing between SFRs, security objectives and the security problem definition**

5103 The tracing between SFRs, security objectives and the SPD becomes more straightforward in a Direct  
5104 Rationale ST.

5105 Figure D.3 shows the more direct specification of the SFRs that is used in the Direct Rationale approach.



**Figure D.3 — Relations between the security problem definition, the security objectives, and the security requirements for Direct Rationale STs**

5106 **D.5 Referring to other standards in a ST**

5107 Referring to standards in a ST is similar to the section on standards for PPs as described in B.4.

5108 Examples are given in clauses D.3.7.1.2 and D.3.7.2.

5109

## Annex E (Normative)

### PP Conformance

5110  
5111  
5112  
5113

#### 5114 **E.1 General**

5115 A PP is intended to be used as a “template” for a ST. That is: the PP describes a set of user needs, while a  
5116 ST that conforms to that PP describes a TOE that satisfies those needs.

5117 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) does not allow any form of partial conformance, so if PP conformance is  
5118 claimed, the ST **shall** conform to the referenced PP(s) or PP-Configuration.

5119 NOTE 1 In the case of selection-based or optional SFRs, the inclusion or exclusion of these types of SFRs as  
5120 outlined in 7.3.2.6 is not considered partial conformance and so is allowed.

5121 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) defines three types of conformance: “demonstrable”, “strict” and “exact”  
5122 where the type of conformance allowed is determined by the PP or PP-Configuration (and indirectly its  
5123 PPs and PP-Modules). That is, the PP/PP-Configuration states, in accordance with B.3.3, what the  
5124 allowed types of conformance for the derivative STs are.

5125 As indicated in 10.3, if a PP/PP-Configuration specifies exact conformance, then a ST **shall** only claim  
5126 exact conformance to that PP, and any other PP to which the ST claims conformance **shall** also require  
5127 exact conformance. If the PP is included in a PP-Configuration (either by itself, or as a base PP to a PP-  
5128 Module in that PP-Configuration), then the PP-Configuration itself and all other components of the PP-  
5129 Configuration also require exact conformance.

5130 The distinction between demonstrable, strict, and exact conformance when such conformance  
5131 statements are contained in multiple PPs to which a ST is claiming conformance is applicable to each PP  
5132 to which a ST **may** claim conformance on an individual basis. This **may** mean that the ST conforms  
5133 strictly to some other PPs and demonstrably to other PPs.

5134 A ST with exact conformance type **shall** claim conformance to a PP or PP-Configuration only if the  
5135 PP/PP-Configuration is of exact conformance type and explicitly allows this.

5136 A ST shall only claim demonstrable conformance to a PP or PP-Configuration if the PP/PP-Configuration  
5137 explicitly allows this.

5138 NOTE 2 Demonstrable conformance means that STs claiming conformance with the PP or PP-Configuration  
5139 must offer a solution to the generic security problem described in the PP/PP-Configuration, but can do so in any  
5140 way that is equivalent or more restrictive to that described in the PP/PP-Configuration. In principle that means  
5141 that the ST can contain statements that vary from the PP/PP-Configuration, provided that overall the ST levies the  
5142 same or more restrictions on the TOE, and the same or less restrictions on the operational environment of the  
5143 TOE.

5144 It is also possible for a PP to be used as a template for another PP that specifies either strict or  
5145 demonstrable conformance type. That is, PPs specifying either strict or demonstrable conformance can  
5146 claim conformance to other PPs. This case is completely similar to that of a ST vs. a PP.

5147 When the ST conforms with a PP-Configuration and this PP-Configuration is not of exact conformance,  
5148 then the ST may be required to conform in a strict and in a demonstrable manner depending on the  
5149 conformance types of the PP-Configuration components.

5150 The conformance of a PP to a PP-Configuration is not allowed regardless of the conformance types.

#### 5151 **E.2 Demonstrable conformance**

5152 Demonstrable conformance is orientated to the PP sponsor who requires evidence that the ST is a  
5153 suitable solution to the generic security problem described in the PP.

5154 Where there is a clear subset-superset type relation between PP and ST in the case of strict  
 5155 conformance, the relation is less clear-cut in the case of demonstrable conformance. STs claiming  
 5156 conformance to the PP **shall** offer a solution to the generic security problem described in the PP.

5157 However, claiming conformance is allowed only in the case that the ST imposes the same, or more,  
 5158 restrictions on the TOE and the same, or less, restrictions on the operational environment of the TOE.

### 5159 **E.3 Strict conformance**

5160 Strict conformance is oriented to the PP sponsor who requires evidence that the requirements in the PP  
 5161 are met, that the ST is an instantiation of the PP, though the ST could be broader than the PP. In essence,  
 5162 the ST specifies that the TOE does at least the same as in the PP, while the operational environment  
 5163 does at most the same as in the PP.

#### 5164 **EXAMPLE**

5165 A typical example of the use of strict conformance is in selection-based purchasing where an IT product's security  
 5166 requirements are expected to match those specified in the PP.

5167 A ST instantiating strict conformance to a PP **can** still introduce additional restrictions to those given in  
 5168 the PP.

### 5169 **E.4 Exact conformance**

#### 5170 **E.4.1 General**

5171 Exact conformance is oriented to the PP sponsor who requires evidence that the requirements in the PP  
 5172 are met, and that the ST is an instantiation of exactly those security requirements (SFRs) without  
 5173 including additional functionality. In essence, the ST specifies that the TOE does what is required by the  
 5174 PP without making additional claims.

5175 If “exact” conformance is selected, the PP author also has the option of specifying the following  
 5176 information:

- 5177 a) Other PPs to which a ST **may** claim conformance in combination with the subject PP and still  
 5178 maintain exact conformance;
- 5179 b) PP-Modules that **may** be specified with the PP in a PP-Configuration and still maintain exact  
 5180 conformance.

5181 **NOTE 1** This can be achieved either by using the PP as a base PP, or by inclusion in the PP-  
 5182 Configuration with a different base PP.

5183 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) allows STs to claim exact conformance to multiple PPs as long as all PPs  
 5184 require exact conformance in their conformance statement, and allow the claim with the other PPs  
 5185 specified. ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) allows STs to claim exact conformance to a PP-Configuration as  
 5186 long as the PP-Configuration requires exact conformance and the STs do not claim conformance to any  
 5187 other PP or PP-Configuration.

5188 ISO/IEC 15408 (all parts) also allows PPs to claim conformance to one or more PPs. However, in the  
 5189 case where the PP being claimed requires exact conformance the potential to circumvent the intent of  
 5190 exact conformance becomes apparent. This is because requirements could be added that the exact  
 5191 conformance PP's authors would not find appropriate for use with the claimed PP. Therefore, if a PP  
 5192 requires exact conformance, another PP **shall not** claim any type of conformance to that PP. This  
 5193 restriction gives the exact conformance PP author more control over the functionality and assurance  
 5194 provided for conformant STs than either strict or demonstrable conformance does.

#### 5195 **EXAMPLE 1**

5196 If a ST **can** claim conformance to PP A (which requires exact conformance) and to PP B (which requires  
 5197 demonstrable conformance) at the same time, this would pull in SFRs which PP A's author did not explicitly  
 5198 approve to be used in combination with PP A's functionality when a ST claims conformance to PP A.

5199 As indicated above, it is allowed for a ST to claim exact conformance with multiple exact conformance  
 5200 PPs. Also, a PP-Configuration is allowed to include multiple components (PPs, base PPs, and PP-  
 5201 Modules) that require exact conformance. In order to allow PP authors to maintain control of which PP-  
 5202 Configuration components **may** be claimed along with their PP, the conformance statement in the PP,  
 5203 described in B.2.3, **may** also include a statement specifying which PPs a ST author may simultaneously  
 5204 claim conformance to with the subject PP. All identified PPs **shall** require exact conformance in their  
 5205 conformance statement and **shall** also list the subject PPs, and all other PPs being claimed, in their  
 5206 conformance statement. The same construct is used for PP-Modules and base PPs (although base PPs  
 5207 are indistinguishable PPs that are not designated as base PPs in this aspect). Example 2 is provided to  
 5208 clarify the concept of a ST claiming conformance to multiple PPs.

5209 EXAMPLE 2

5210 For the ST example, suppose PP B’s authors wanted to allow STs to claim conformance to PP “B” and also to allow  
 5211 conformance claims to it in combination with PP “C”. This situation is pictured in Figure E.1.

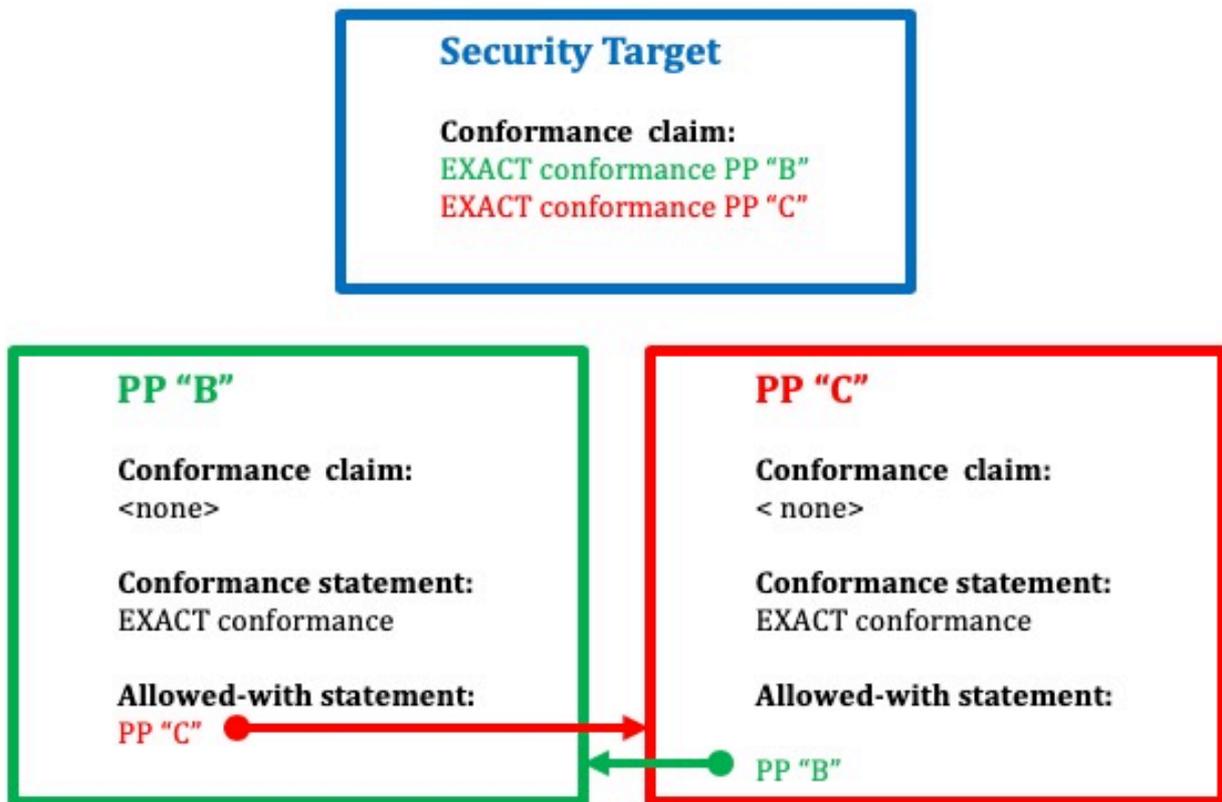


Figure E.1 — Exact conformance of a ST to multiple PPs

5212 Then the following would have to be true:

- 5213 a) Both PP B and PP C would have to specify exact conformance in their conformance statement.
- 5214 b) PP B would list PP C as allowed with PP B in its allowed-with statement.
- 5215 c) PP C would list PP B as allowed with PP C in its allowed-with statement.

5216 If any of these statements did not hold, then the ST could not claim exact conformance to PPs B and C.

5217 This concept also extends to PP-Modules and PP-Configurations. A PP-Module **shall** identify a set of base  
 5218 PPs/PP-Modules; if one of the identified base PPs/PP-Modules has a conformance statement of exact  
 5219 conformance, then all of the base PPs/PP-Modules specified by the PP-Module **shall** also have  
 5220 conformance statements specifying exact conformance. Further, in order to ensure that the PP-Modules  
 5221 are allowed for use with the base PP/PP-Module, each base PP/PP-Module specifies in its conformance

5222 statement the PP-Modules that are allowed to specify it as a base PP/PP-Modules for use in a PP-  
 5223 Configuration.

5224 NOTE 3 The reverse is not true; a PP-Module does not need to specify any of its base PPs/PP-Modules in the  
 5225 Allowed-with statement because it has implicitly done so by defining the PP/PP-Module as a base PP/PP-Module.

5226 A PP-Module also specifies which other PP-Modules or PPs that are not already included as one of the  
 5227 PP-Module's base PPs/PP-Modules, can be used in combination with it in a PP-Configuration.

5228 EXAMPLE 3

5229 Figure E.2 describes a case for exact conformance involving both PPs and PP-Modules.

5230

5231

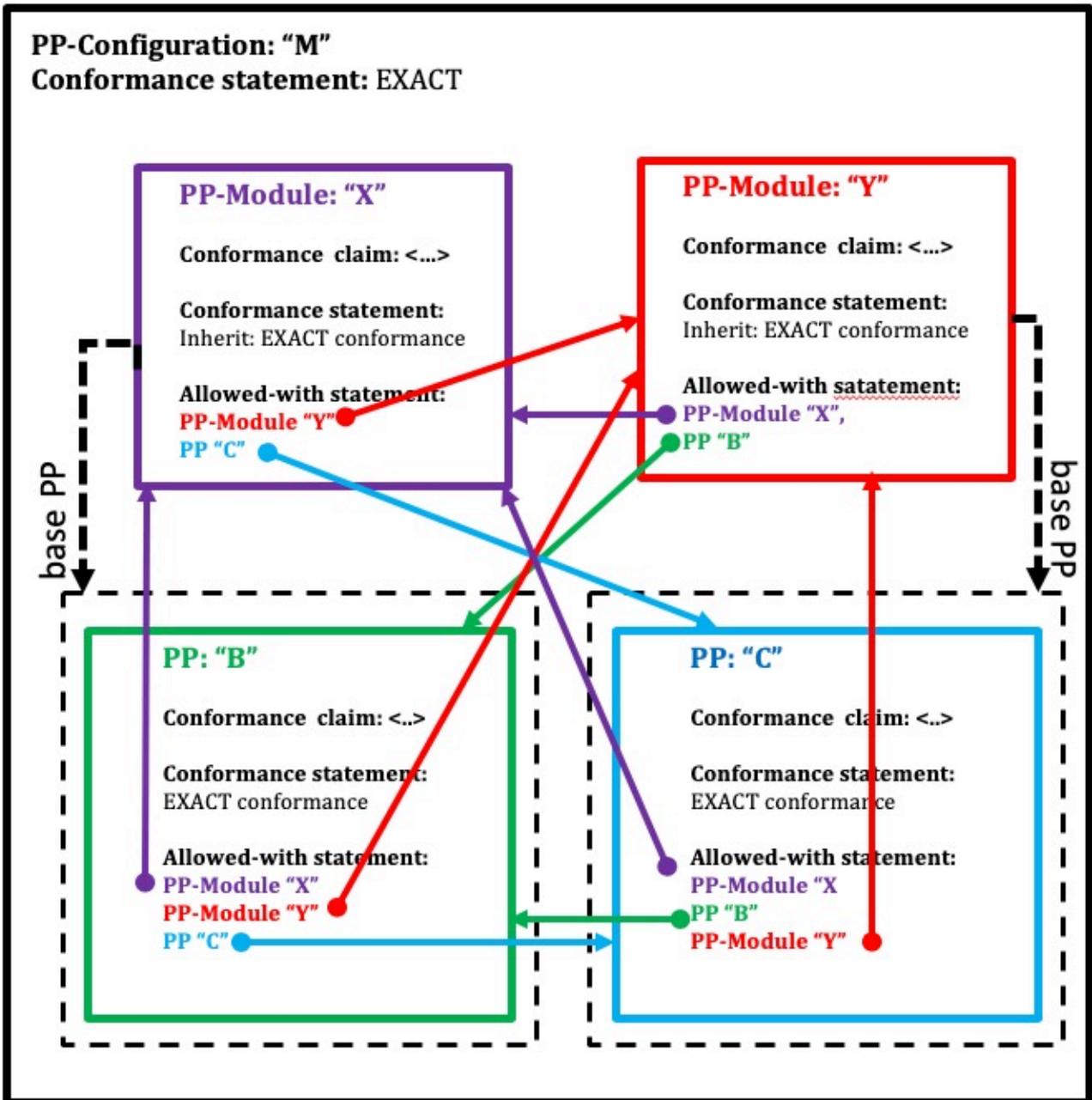


Figure E.2 — Exact conformance with a PP-Configuration including multiple PPs and PP-Modules

5232

5233 **E.4.2 Exact conformance FAQs / Cheat-sheet**

5234 Table E.4 gives a summary of frequently asked questions about the exact conformance case.

5235

5236

**Table E.4 — Exact Conformance Summary**

<b>PP-Configurations</b>	<b>Clause</b>	<b>Allowed/Required?</b>
Can be used in multi-assurance – modular PP-Configuration?	Figure 5	No
Can be used in single assurance – modular PP-Configuration?	Figure 5	Yes
Can mix EC with strict/demonstrable conformance types	10.6.1	No
Other EC PPs allowed in EC PP-Configuration		Yes
<b>EC PP</b>		
Optional/Selection-based SFRs in EC PP	12.4.1	Yes
Additional SPD elements associated with optional SFRs		Yes
EC PP claim conformance to another EC PP? (Chained)	10.6.1 10.4.6 10.8.3 B.3.2.2	No
Other EC PPs allowed in EC PP-Configuration		Yes
PP build upon strict or demonstrable PP?		No
Can be used in strict or demonstrable PP-Configuration?		No
States which other EC PPs are “Allowed-with”		Yes
States which other EC PP-Modules are “Allowed-with”	11.2.3.3 d)	Yes
<b>EC PP-Modules</b>		
Optional/Selection-based SFRs in EC PP-Module	11.2.3.3	Yes
EC PP-Module allowed none base PPs	11.2.3.3 d)	Yes
States other EC PPs and PP-Modules are allowed-with	11.2.3.3 d)	Yes
All Allowed-with items also EC	11.2.3.3 d)	Yes
<b>EC functional Packages</b>		
Optional/Selection-based SFRs allowed in EC functional Package		Yes
Functional packages can be augmented in the ST		No
Are claimed in a ST conformance claim	12.2.1 d)	No
<b>EC STs</b>		
Contains the SPD of all EC PPs, and/or PP-Configuration	12.4.3	Yes

components		
Additional or hierarchically higher security requirements?	12.4.4	No
Includes only those selection-based requirements that have been selected	12.4.4	Yes
Can be used with Direct Rationale approach		No

5237

5238

## Bibliography

5239 This bibliography contains references to further material and standards useful to the readers of ISO/IEC  
5240 15408 (all parts). For undated references the reader is recommended to refer to the latest edition of the  
5241 referenced document.

### 5242 ISO/IEC standards and guidance

5243 [1] ISO/IEC 8367, *Information technology — Security techniques — Cryptographic algorithms and*  
5244 *security mechanisms conformance testing*

5245 [2] ISO/IEC 15443 (all parts), *Information technology — Security techniques — A framework for IT*  
5246 *security assurance*

5247 [3] ISO/IEC 15446, *Information technology — Security techniques — Guidance for the production of*  
5248 *Protection Profiles and ST s*

5249 [4] ISO/IEC TR 18018:2010, *Information technology — Systems and software engineering — Guide for*  
5250 *configuration management tool capabilities*

5251 [5] ISO/IEC TR 18031:2011, *Information technology — Security techniques — Random bit generation*

5252 [6] ISO/IEC 19608, *Information technology — Security techniques — Guidance for developing security*  
5253 *and privacy functional requirements based on ISO/IEC 15408*

5254 [7] ISO/IEC 19249, *Information technology — Security techniques — Catalogue of architectural and*  
5255 *design principles for secure products, systems, and applications*

5256 [8] ISO/IEC 19790, *Information technology — Security techniques — Security requirements for*  
5257 *cryptographic modules*

5258 [9] ISO/IEC 19791, *Information technology — Security techniques — Security assessment of operational*  
5259 *systems*

5260 [10] ISO/IEC 19896-1, *IT Security techniques — Competence requirements for information security*  
5261 *testers and evaluators: Part 1: Introduction, concepts, and general requirements*

5262 [11] ISO/IEC 19896-3, *IT Security techniques — Competence requirements for information security*  
5263 *testers and evaluators: Part 3: Knowledge, skills, and effectiveness requirements for ISO/IEC 15408*  
5264 *evaluators*

5265 [12] ISO/IEC 20004, *Information technology — Security techniques — Refining software vulnerability*  
5266 *analysis under ISO/IEC 15408 and ISO/IEC 18045*

5267 [13] DRAFT ISO/IEC TR 22216, *Information technology — Security techniques — Introductory guidance*  
5268 *on evaluation for IT security*

### 5269 Editors' Note:

5270 Note that while in draft, this companion document to 15408/18045 revision 4 aims to provide a useful overview  
5271 of changes to the ISO revision audience and is updated in step with the ISO/IEC 15408/18045 revision

5272 The editors expect that ISO/IEC 22216 will be published concurrently with this standard

5273 [14] ISO/IEC 27001, *Information technology — Security techniques — Information security management*  
5274 *systems — Requirements*

5275 [15] ISO/IEC 27002, *Information technology — Security techniques — Code of practice for information*  
5276 *security management*

5277 [16] ISO/IEC 27034, *Information technology — Security techniques — Application security*

### 5278 Other standards and guidance

5279 [16] CCDB. *Composite product evaluation for Smart Cards and similar devices*, April 2012, V1.2  
5280 Available at <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/files/supdocs/CCDB-2012-04-001.pdf>

5281 **Catalogues of PPs and evaluated products**

5282 [17] Common Criteria portal: Certified Products, available at  
5283 <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/products/>

5284 [18] Common Criteria portal: Protection Profiles, available at  
5285 <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/pps/>

5286 [19] Common Criteria portal: Collaborative Protection Profiles, available at  
5287 <http://www.commoncriteriaportal.org/pps/?cpp=1>

5288